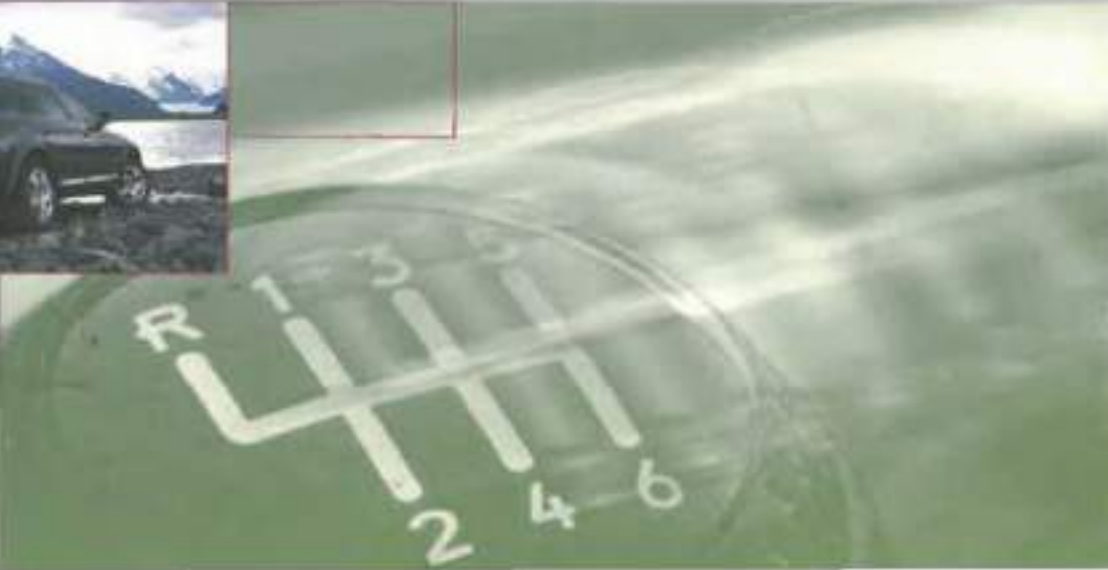




Owner's Manual

**2001 Audi allroad**



**2001 Audi allroad**

**2.7l V6-cylinder engine**

In addition to this **Owner's Manual**, your Audi comes with a **Maintenance booklet, Warranty booklet** and for some models, **special supplements**.

Moreover, depending on the model and the equipment, there may be additional instruction booklets delivered with your vehicle (for example, Sound System Operating Instructions).

If you are missing one of these publications, or if you believe that the information is not complete, contact your authorized Audi Dealer for assistance.

### **The Owner's Manual**

and the supplements should be read carefully and as soon as possible to acquaint yourself with your vehicle.

Pay special attention to the chapter entitled "Vehicle operation". There you will see how to drive safely and economically, and how to minimize pollution.

**For safety reasons please note also the information regarding additional accessories, modifications and parts replacement on page 262.**

The other chapters are also important because correct operation of the vehicle – in addition to proper care and maintenance – serves to maintain the value of the vehicle. In many cases, it may also be one of the conditions for upholding warranty claims.

**Notes explaining this manual:**

This manual describes all the equipment intended at the time of printing. Some of the equipment may be available at a later date or not at all.


**WARNINGS**

**concern safety and are highlighted like this throughout this manual.**

*✿ Texts identified by this symbol and written in italics are important notes regarding the environment and how you can help to protect it.*

**Texts printed in bold type refer to possible damage to your vehicle, or to other important information.**

Please note that items marked with an asterisk \* may be standard on certain models, optional on others or not available on your model.



If one of the Warning and indicator lights marked with a STOP-sign comes on while you are driving, move a safe distance off the road, turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Go to listed page in your manual for explanations.

**Illustrations**

Each illustration in the manual shows a feature and / or equipment which your vehicle may or may not have, depending on the model. The illustrations are simply to show you how a feature looks and its function.

**Alphabetical Index**

At the back of this book, you will find an extensive Alphabetical Index. This will help you to find information quickly by using key words.

**Table of Contents**

On the following page, you will find the Table of Contents which describes all the features of your vehicle in the order they appear in this manual.

### **Indication of directions**

Whenever a direction is specified (for example: left, right, forward, backward, etc.), you should imagine yourself as sitting in the vehicle facing in the driving direction. If something is explained which is different from this position, it will be clearly identified.

### **The Warranty booklet**

contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Audi.

### **The Maintenance booklet**

explains how you can keep your Audi in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly. Always have the Maintenance booklet with you when you take your vehicle to an authorized Audi Dealer for service. Your Service Adviser will record each scheduled service.

### **In Canada,**

this literature is also available in French. To obtain a copy, contact your dealer or write to:

Au Canada, on peut se procurer un exemplaire en français de ce document auprès du concessionnaire ou de:

Volkswagen Canada, Inc.  
Customer Assistance/  
Assistance à la Clientèle,  
777 Bayly Street, West,  
Ajax, Ontario L1S 7G7

### **If you sell your Audi**

all literature should be left in the vehicle to make the Warranty terms as well as all operating, safety and maintenance information available to the next owner.

### **If you change your address or if you bought this Audi used**

be sure to send in a "Notice of Address Change" / "Notice of Used Car Purchase" post card. This card can be found in the Warranty booklet or obtained from your authorized Audi Dealer.

**It is in your own interest that we are able to contact you should the need arise.**

**GENERAL ILLUSTRATION**

General illustration . . . . . 8  
 Warning and indicator lights . . . . . 10

**SAFETY FIRST**

Welcome . . . . . 13  
 Safety first . . . . . 13  
 Safety belts . . . . . 14  
 Airbag system . . . . . 25  
 Child safety . . . . . 44

**CONTROLS AND EQUIPMENT**

Keys . . . . . 56  
 Power locks . . . . . 59  
 Power windows . . . . . 69  
 Mirrors . . . . . 72  
 Head restraints . . . . . 75  
 Front seats . . . . . 76  
 Memory for front seats . . . . . 81  
 Center armrest . . . . . 85

Rear seats . . . . . 86  
 Luggage compartment . . . . . 88  
 Rear facing child seat bench . . . . . 92  
 Ski sack . . . . . 96  
 Adjustable steering column  
 (tilt and telescopic) . . . . . 98  
 Pedals . . . . . 102  
 Parking brake lever . . . . . 103  
 5-speed automatic transmission  
 (Tiptronic®) . . . . . 104  
 Acoustic park assist . . . . . 112  
 Ignition switch . . . . . 113  
 Starting procedures . . . . . 114  
 Stopping engine . . . . . 115  
 Instrument cluster . . . . . 116  
 Service Interval Display . . . . . 121  
 Warning / Indicator lights . . . . . 122  
 On Board Diagnostic system . . . . . 128  
 Driver information system . . . . . 130  
 Menu display . . . . . 131  
 Rear lid / door open indicator . . . . . 137  
 Outside air temperature . . . . . 137  
 Radio frequency display . . . . . 138  
 Auto-Check system . . . . . 138  
 Speed warning . . . . . 144  
 Trip computer . . . . . 146  
 Switches . . . . . 148  
 Ride height adjustment  
 (4 Level Air Suspension) . . . . . 153  
 Turn signals,  
 headlight dimmer switch lever . . . . . 156  
 Cruise control . . . . . 158  
 Wiper and washer system . . . . . 150  
 Climate controls . . . . . 152  
 Power roof . . . . . 168  
 Interior lights, reading lights . . . . . 171  
 Luggage compartment light . . . . . 172  
 Audi HomeLink®  
 Universal Transmitter . . . . . 173  
 Sun visors . . . . . 177  
 Sun shade . . . . . 177  
 Glove compartment . . . . . 178  
 Coat hooks . . . . . 179  
 Ashtray . . . . . 180

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Cigarette lighter / Socket . . . . .	181
Storage compartments . . . . .	182
Steering wheel with Audio controls . . . . .	185
Steering wheel with radio and telephone equipment in the steering wheel . . . . .	186
Mobile telephones and CB radios . . . . .	189
Carphone . . . . .	190
Roof rack . . . . .	191

## VEHICLE OPERATION

The first 1,000 miles (1 500 km) – and afterwards . . . . .	193
Operate your vehicle safely . . . . .	194
Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution . . . . .	195
Driving on rough roads or rugged terrain . . . . .	199
Braking . . . . .	201
Electronic differential lock (EDL) . . . . .	204

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) . . . . .	205
Driving with your quattro® . . . . .	207
Trailer towing . . . . .	208

## VEHICLE CARE

Cleaning and protection . . . . .	212
Fuel tank . . . . .	222
Fuel supply . . . . .	225
Maintenance . . . . .	228
Engine hood . . . . .	231
Engine compartment . . . . .	232
Engine oil . . . . .	234
Engine cooling system . . . . .	238
Power steering . . . . .	241
Brake fluid . . . . .	242
Battery . . . . .	244
Air cleaner . . . . .	248
Spark plugs . . . . .	249
Belts . . . . .	249
Windshield / headlight washer container . . . . .	250

Wiper blades . . . . .	251
Tires / Wheels . . . . .	252
Difficult operating conditions . . . . .	262
Additional accessories, Modifications and Parts replacement . . . . .	262

## DO-IT-YOURSELF SERVICE

First aid kit . . . . .	263
Emergency warning triangle . . . . .	263
Jack and tools . . . . .	264
Spare wheel . . . . .	266
Changing a wheel . . . . .	267
Fuses . . . . .	274
Replacing bulbs . . . . .	277
Installing / replacing a radio . . . . .	277
Emergency starting . . . . .	278
Emergency towing with commercial tow truck . . . . .	281
Lifting vehicle . . . . .	283

**TECHNICAL DATA**

Engine data .....	286
Capacities .....	287
Dimensions .....	288
Weights ...	289
Vehicle identification .....	290

**CONSUMER INFORMATION**

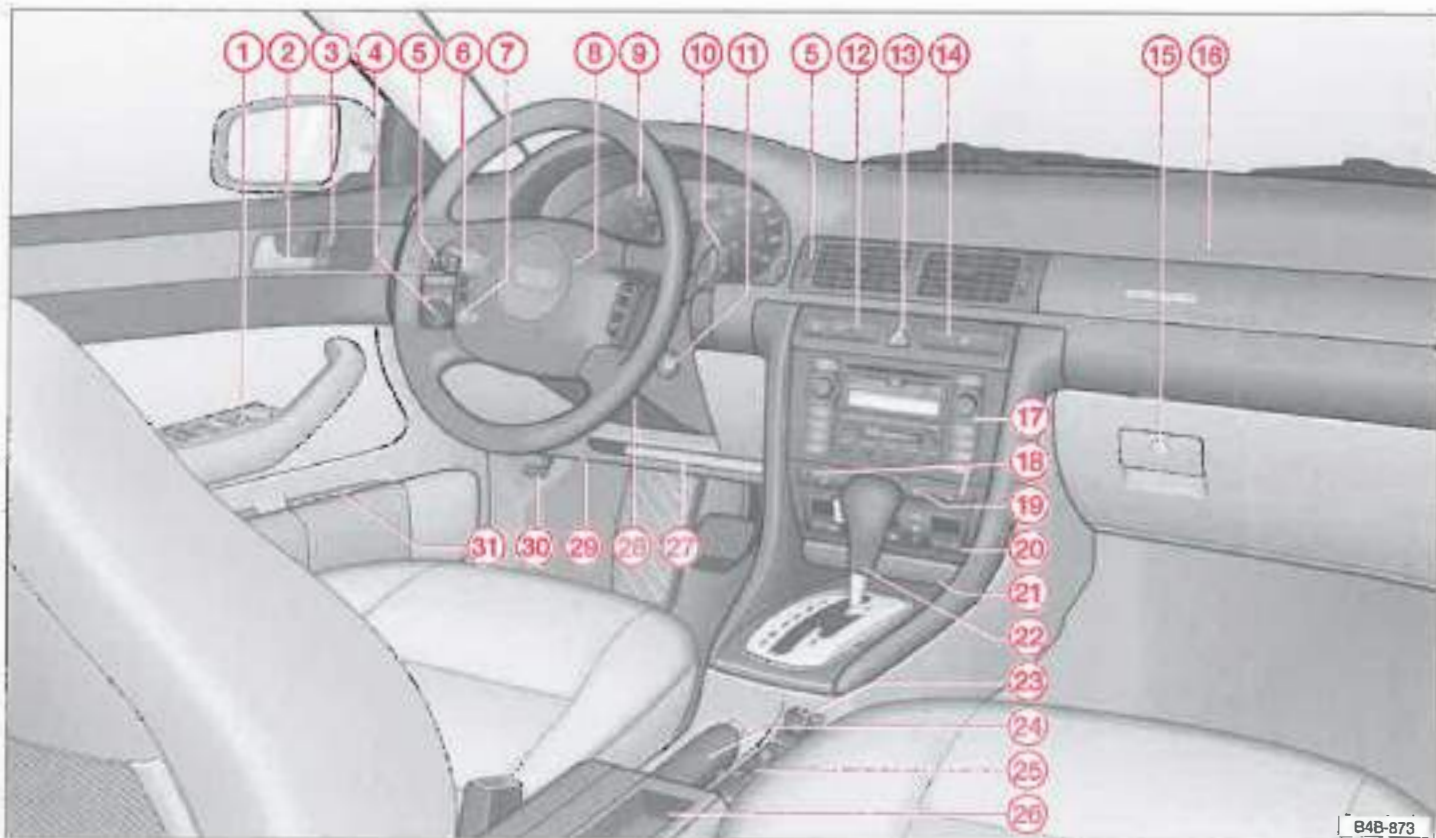
Reporting safety defects .....	292
Outside the U.S.A. or Canada ...	292
Service Repair Manuals ...	293

**ALPHABETICAL INDEX**

Index .....	296
-------------	-----



**General illustration**











	Page	
1	Power window switches	69
2	Door handle	59
3	Power locking switch	62
4	Light switch	148
5	Air vents	165
6	Turn signals / headlight dimmer switch lever ...	156
	Cruise control .....	158
7	Instrument illumination	149
8	Horn, driver's airbag .....	25
	Radio / CD / buttons .....	185
	Radio / CD / telephone buttons .....	186
9	Instrument cluster .....	116
	Warning / indicator lights .....	122
10	Windshield wiper / washer lever .....	160
	Trip computer function control switch .....	146
11	Steering lock / ignition / starter switch	113
12	Switch for the Electronic Stability Program (ESP)	152
	Switches for the ride height adjustment and level display .....	153
13	Emergency flasher	152
14	Cup holder	182
15	Glove compartment (lockable)	178
16	Front passenger's airbag	25
17	Radio	











	Page	
18	Thumbwheel for seat heating	150
19	Switch for rear window defogger	151
20	Climate controls	162
21	Ashtray .....	180
	Cigarette lighter .....	181
22	Gearshift lever or Selector lever .....	104
23	Adjuster control for outside mirrors	72
24	Parking brake lever	103
25	Navigation System switch or Cup holder .....	182
26	Storage compartment	
27	Service wallet compartment	183
28	Adjustable steering wheel	98
29	Data Link Connector (DLC) for On Board Diagnostics (OBD)	128
30	Release lever for engine hood	231
31	Memory for driver's seat	81











**Notes**

- Some features mentioned are standard equipment on some models only and options on others.
- For technical reasons, the arrangement of the switches and indicator/warning lights may differ. The governing factor is the symbol on the switch itself.


## Warning and indicator lights

Symbol		Page
<b>EPC</b>	Electronic power control	123
	Side marker lights / headlights	123
	Self-leveling suspension	123
	Electronic Stability Program (ESP)	124
	Electronic immobilizer	124
	Turn signals, emergency flasher	125, 152
	High beam	125
 CHECK	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)	125
<b>AIR BAG</b>	Airbag system	25, 125
<b>ABS</b>	Anti-lock brake system (USA models)	125
	Anti-lock brake system (Canada models)	125

Symbol		Page
<b>BRAKE</b>	Brake (USA models) 	126
	Brake (Canada models) 	126
	Generator, Battery voltage	127, 143
	Safety belt	127
<b>OK</b>	Auto-Check system ok / no failure in the checked systems	140
	Coolant temperature and level 	141
	Oil pressure 	143
<b>BRAKE LIGHT</b>	Brake lights malfunction (USA models)	141
	Brake lights malfunction (Canada models)	141

Symbol		Page
	Headlights / tail lights malfunction	143
	Brake pads worn	143
	Washer fluid level low	143
	Fuel level low	143
	Engine oil level low	144
	Engine oil sensor defective	144
	Speed warning	144
	Dynamic headlight dimmer control not functioning	144
	Front fog lights	149
	Rear fog light	149

**Note**

If one of the lights marked with  comes on suddenly while you are driving, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Go to listed page in your Owner's Manual for explanations.



## Welcome

### Dear Audi Owner,

This chapter contains important information, tips and suggestions on occupant safety.

We've prepared this chapter in order to summarize what you need to know about such topics as safety belts, airbags, child safety, seats for children and infants.

**Please make certain that you follow the suggestions and warnings given – it's in your own interest and in the interest of all your passengers.**

**However, please note, that important safety information regarding your vehicle and its operation will also be found in all other chapters of this Owner's Manual.**

**Remember – safety first!**

## Safety first

Your safety and the safety of your passengers shouldn't be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident. The following is a listing of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts with tensioners
- optimized safety belt geometry through safety belt anchorages on front seats, safety belt height adjusters front seats, lateral belt adjustment on outer rear seats, safety belt guide for the center rear seat
- front airbags
- side airbags in the front and rear\* seats
- head airbags left and right above the doors
- special seat pan structure
- adjustable steering column
- padded kneebar integrated into the dashboard.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features can't work as a system if they are not always properly adjusted and properly used!

The following sections provide important information about why these features are important, how they work to help protect you and your passengers and how they must be adjusted and used to get the greatest benefit and reduce the likelihood of injury.

The sections also contain important **WARNINGS** which you and your passengers must always heed in order to reduce the risk of personal injury.

**Safety is everybody's responsibility!**

■

## Safety belts



**Always wear your safety belts!**

### WARNING

● **Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the potential for serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always properly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.**

● **Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons should also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother – throughout the entire pregnancy.**

This section explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them properly.

**Please read all the information given, and always observe the following instructions and warnings.**

**For information on child safety see page 44.**



### **Why safety belts work**

**Safety belts can't work unless they are worn and worn properly.**

The illustration above shows the passengers on a "vehicle" headed for a brick wall. They're not using safety belts.

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy "kinetic energy."

**For details see next pages.**



The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the passengers' weight, the more energy there is to be "absorbed" in an accident.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because these passengers are not using safety belts, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them – here, the wall.



The same principles apply to people sitting in a car that is involved in a frontal collision.

Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2000 lbs, or 1000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their car. In a frontal collision they will also continue to move forward at the speed their car was travelling just before the impact.



Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant **will** slam violently into the steering wheel, dashboard, windshield, or whatever else is in the way. Their impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.



Don't rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags for the driver and front seat passenger, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, still have to wear safety belts – regardless of whether their seating position has an airbag.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the car where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.



Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also other passengers. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver or front seat passenger.

### **Safety belts protect**

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the car.



Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crumple zones and other safety features engineered into today's cars. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the forces on the body become more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other types of accidents. So, whether you are on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too.

Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in an accident. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

The following pages provide important instructions to enable you to use safety belts properly. **Be sure to read and follow the instructions carefully. Heed all WARNINGS.**

To further increase the safety for the front passengers, the vehicle is equipped with a supplemental airbag system. See page 25. The safety belts provided must nevertheless be worn because the front airbags are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated by minor frontal collisions, side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in some cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle.



### Belt warning system

Your vehicle has a warning light for the driver to remind you to wear the safety belt.

After the ignition is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster will come on for about 6 seconds along with a warning tone. As soon as the driver has fastened the safety belt the warning tone will stop. The warning light, however, will stay on for about 6 seconds.

**Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.**

## How to wear safety belts properly

Safety belts must always be properly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

### **WARNING**

Always fasten your safety belts before driving off. Always make sure your passengers are properly restrained – even those sitting in the rear.

Safety belts can work only when used properly. Never wear safety belts in any other way than illustrated and described in this section. Always observe the following precautions:

- Never wear belts twisted.

### **WARNING continued**

- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with proper positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.

### **WARNING continued**

- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware. Always keep belt buckles free of any obstruction that may prevent secure locking.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt portion. However, clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts periodically. If belts show damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors, have them replaced.

**WARNING continued**

- **Keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly – see also “Cleaning and protection” page 218.**
- **Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi Dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen.**
- **Safety belt anchorages that have been loaded in an accident must be inspected by a qualified workshop or an authorized Audi Dealer.**
- **Never modify, disassemble, or try to repair your safety belts.**

**Seating capacity**

Your Audi has 5 seating positions, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

**WARNING**

**Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are seat belts available. Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is correctly restrained with a separate seat belt.**

**Lap-shoulder belt**

The front and rear seats are equipped with three-point safety belts.

The three-point belts in the front passenger and rear positions each have a convertible locking feature in addition to the emergency locking feature. The convertible locking feature is used when a child seat is installed, see page 51.

The retractors in the combination lap-shoulder belts allow the system to adjust to your size and movements as long as the pull on the belt is slow.

Hard braking or a collision locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or in a sharp curve.



## Fastening the safety belt

- Adjust your seat before fastening the safety belt. See page 76.

### WARNING

**Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.**

- To fasten, grasp belt tongue and pull the belt in a continuous slow motion across your chest and lap.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle on the inboard side of the seat. Push down until it is securely locked with an audible click.  
**Pull belt to check!**

### WARNING

- Always make sure the safety belt tongue is inserted into the buckle for the same seating position.
- Attaching the safety belt to the buckle for another seat could reduce safety belt effectiveness and cause injury.



## Adjusting shoulder seat belt

### Belt height adjustment front seats

**Safety belt height adjusters** for the front seats can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt. This feature will help you properly position the shoulder portion of the safety belt across your shoulder.

- Press the handle slowly up or down so that the shoulder portion of the safety belt is positioned nearly midway over the shoulder.
- Pull on the shoulder belt to check whether the belt anchor is securely locked in place.



The shoulder belt must be positioned over the shoulder.

**It must never rest against the neck and must fit against your body. The lap belt must be worn low and tight across the pelvis. See illustration above.**

Pull belt tight.



### **WARNING**

- **Always position your safety belt properly over your body for maximum safety. An improperly positioned safety belt can cause serious injury in an accident.**

- **Safety belts worn too loose will let your body move too far forward in a crash.**

**A loose belt can also shift its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable soft tissue and cause serious injury.**



### **WARNING**

**Pregnant women should especially make sure to wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen. The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother – throughout the entire pregnancy.**



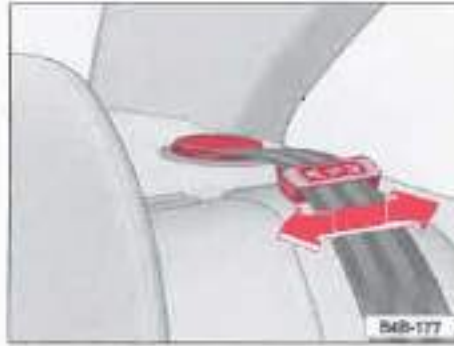
**Lateral belt adjustment outer rear seats**

Passengers sitting in the rear must position safety belts over their body as outlined for the front occupants.

The shoulder belt must be positioned over the shoulder.

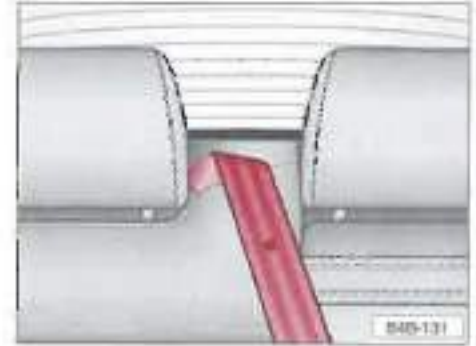
**It must never rest against the neck and must fit against your body. The lap belt must be worn low and tight across the pelvis.**

**See illustration above.** Pull belt tight.



The outer rear seats are equipped with a **lateral shoulder belt adjustment.**

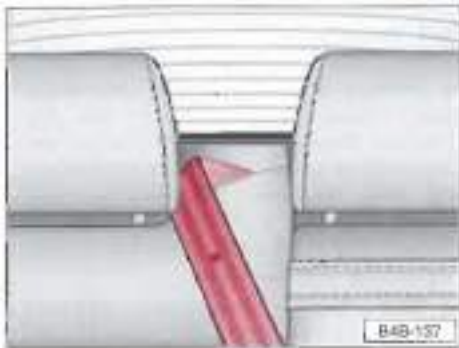
- To adjust the shoulder belts of **the outer seats**, move the belt guide towards the center of the vehicle for taller occupants, or towards the outside for shorter occupants. See symbols on the belt guide.



**Safety belt guide for the center rear seat**

The three-point belt adjusts itself to suit the height of the occupant.

The above illustration shows the belt fitted on a person of average height.



For occupants who may be smaller, the position of the belt should be adjusted by placing the belt in the guide, if otherwise the belt would run across the wearer's neck instead of over the center of the shoulder (see illustration).

If the occupant moves a long way to one side and the belt slides out of the guide, it must be placed back in the guide by hand.

### Convertible Locking Retractor (CLR)

The convertible locking retractor is necessary to secure child restraint systems.

The retractors for the front passenger's seat and the rear seat three-point safety belts are equipped with an automatic locking feature in addition to the emergency locking feature.

If you need to install a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat or on one of the rear seats, it must be secured by use of the belt after activating the locking feature – see pages 32 and 51 for important safety information related to the use of child restraints on the front seat.

#### Activating the locking retractor

- Slowly pull the belt all the way out.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position (pull on it to check!) and guide the rest of the belt with your hand back in place; while doing this you should hear a clicking sound. This sound signals that the locking retractor has been activated.

#### Deactivating the locking retractor

The locking retractor is deactivated by unfastening the safety belt and allowing the safety belt to retract completely to its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary three-point safety belt without the additional locking feature.

**If a person sitting in the passenger seat or rear wearing the safety belt should activate the locking retractor, then the safety belt must be unfastened in order to deactivate the locking retractor.**



#### WARNING

**Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the locking retractor while the vehicle is in motion. You would not be protected at all and could suffer serious injury in an accident.**





### Unfastening the safety belt

- Push the red release button on the buckle. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle.
- Let the belt to wind up on the retractor as you guide belt tongue to its stowed position.

### Belt tensioner

The retractors for the three-point safety belts are equipped with belt tensioners.

Sensors activate the belt tensioners in frontal collisions when deceleration is high enough. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

The belt tensioner can only be activated once. The belt tensioner will not be activated if the safety belt is not in use.

**Never let the belt remain extended over a rear seat back that has been folded forward. The rear belt tensioner will be activated unnecessarily in an accident and then have to be replaced.**

The belt tensioner will not activate in a light frontal collision insufficient to actuate the tensioner or in any side, rollover, or rear-end collision.



### WARNING

● **Safety belt systems including belt tensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal and installation of this system. Therefore, any work on the safety belt system must be performed only by an authorized Audi Dealer.**

● **The belt tensioner system works for one accident only. If belt tensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.**

### Notes

- When the safety belt tensioner is activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- Observe all safety regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be scrapped. Your authorized Audi Dealers are familiar with these regulations and can perform this service for you.

## Airbag system

Your vehicle has **two front and four side airbags**, one front and one side airbag for each front seat occupant, one side airbag\* for each rear seat occupant sitting on the left and right rear seat.

In addition, your vehicle is equipped with head airbags\* on the left and right sides to protect occupants seated next to the front and rear doors.

### System components

The airbag system consists of the following:

- electronic control module,
- an inflatable airbag with gas generator inside the steering wheel,
- an inflatable airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger,
- supplemental side airbags in the backrest padding of the front and rear seats\*,
- an inflatable curtain head airbag above the doors on each side,
- an AIRBAG indicator light in the instrument cluster ( see "Warning / Indicator lights" page 125).

The indicator light in the instrument cluster (readiness light) will light up for a few seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

The light monitors the electronic control module, sensor circuits, and system wiring.

### The system must be inspected if the indicator light:

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out after a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, or
- comes on while driving.

In the event of a system malfunction, the indicator light will stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system repaired.



### WARNING

**If any of these conditions occur, have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi Dealer. Otherwise, the airbags in your vehicle may not work properly in case of a frontal collision or a side impact.**



## Front airbag

The airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel hub and is marked "AIRBAG." See illustration above.

The airbag for the front passenger's seat is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment and is also marked with "AIRBAG." See right illustration.



It is very important to remember that front airbags only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal accidents in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to activate the airbags.

## Front airbags are not activated...

- if the ignition is switched off
- in side collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers

Front airbags may not inflate in certain frontal collisions. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of proper airbag operation.

The front airbags can only provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when...

- safety belts are worn properly,
- the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag
- and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Airbags do not protect the lower part of the body.

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide added protection as intended.

**For more details see next pages.**

 **WARNING**

● **To reduce the risk of injury when the front airbags inflate, the driver and passenger should always sit in an upright position and must never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the front airbags are located.**

● **See "Importance of proper seating position" in this section at pages 29 and 37 and heed all WARNINGS.**

● **Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye. For seat adjustment, see page 76.**

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

An airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. It is part of the overall vehicle safety system. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts. See pages 14 to 24.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, it can cause swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions.

**How the front airbag system works**

The airbag system is designed so that in a severe **frontal collision** the driver and front passenger airbags are triggered. The front airbags will not inflate in frontal collisions in which vehicle deceleration is not high enough, or in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one accident and another.

Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, and etc.

The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the accident.

When the system is activated, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger.

All this takes place within the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy.



Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper torso.

The airbags will deflate immediately after the deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again.

When the system is activated, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. It could irritate skin.



### WARNING

- **The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.**
- **To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the car or opening windows or doors.**
- **If you are in an accident in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.**
- **Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes or into any cuts or scratches.**
- **If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.**

### Importance of proper seating position

In a collision airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags could injure you if you are not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times. By keeping room between your body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions. See page 76 for information on the adjustment of the front seats and also "Front seats" page 78, for details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls. It's especially important that children be properly restrained. See chapter "Child safety", page 44.



### WARNING

- **Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in an accident.**
- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher. You will also receive serious or fatal injuries from the airbag if you are up against it or too close to it when it inflates.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. See "How to wear the safety belts properly" on page 18.**



### WARNING continued

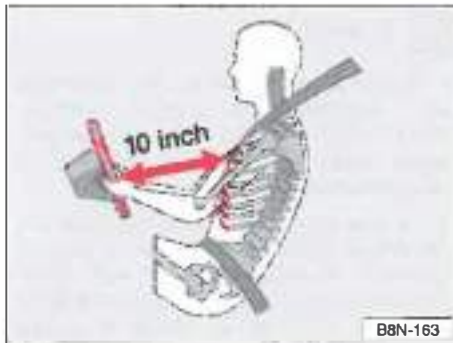
- **Children age 12 or younger should always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates. Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front seats properly.**
  - **Never ride with the backrest reclined.**
  - **Always sit as far as possible from the the steering wheel or the instrument panel.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.



There is a lot that you and your passengers can do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

**Adjusting the driver's seat**

For detailed steps for adjusting the driver's seat please see "Front Seats" on page 76.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat as follows:

- adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals all the way while keeping your knee slightly bent.
- adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
- adjust the steering wheel – see chapter "Adjustable steering column" page 98.
- the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel must be **at least** 10 inches (25 cm) or more. See illustration.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.

**Adjusting the steering wheel**

For detailed steps for adjusting the steering wheel please see "Adjustable steering column" page 98.

Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face. The steering wheel should be adjusted so that you can hold the outer rim of the steering wheel comfortably with your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in an accident.
- Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub.

**Adjusting the passenger's seat**

For detailed steps for adjusting the passenger's seat please see "Front Seats" on page 76.

We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat as follows:

- backrest upright (**never** reclined)
- place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat

- adjust the passenger's seat as far as possible to the rear of the fore and aft adjustment range.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. If the airbag inflates and your feet are on the instrument panel or on the seat, you could receive serious personal injuries.

**Some other important points to know**

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.



**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**



 **WARNING**

- **Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.**
- **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets or even large and bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "Airbag" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash especially when the airbags inflate.**

 **WARNING continued**

- **Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury particularly when the seat is reclined.**

**Child restraints on the front seat – important things to know**

All children, especially 12 years old and younger should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

 **WARNING**

- **Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**
- **Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**

A child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because children are generally better protected – when properly restrained according to their age and size – in a rear seating position, we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat. See "Child Safety" on page 44.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child. Install forward-facing child seats on the rear seat.**

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child seat on the front seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

**⚠ WARNING**

**If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a *forward-facing* child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**

- **make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- For more important information on the use of child restraints in your Audi, see "child seats", page 44.



**Supplemental side airbags**

The **supplemental side airbags** are in the backrest padding for the front and outer rear\* seats (see illustration).

The outboard side of each front backrest and the location of the airbags in the backrest are marked with the word "AIRBAG."

The **supplemental side airbags** can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper torso on that side of the car that is struck in a side collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

To be sure the side airbags can deploy in a side impact:

- Never place protective seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi. Since the side airbags deploy out of the side of the seatback, they would not be able to deploy and protect properly.
- Do not use additional seat cushions that cover or interfere with the areas where the side airbags inflate.
- Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi Dealer.

The supplemental side airbags inflate only **in severe side collisions** occurring on the impact side of the vehicle.

**The supplemental side airbags will not inflate...**

- if the ignition is switched off
- in frontal collisions
- in side collisions in which vehicle deceleration is not high enough
- in rear collisions
- in rollovers.

Under some accident conditions, both front and side airbags may inflate.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

A side airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. It is part of the overall vehicle safety system. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts. See pages 14 to 24.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, it can cause swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions.

**How the supplemental side airbag system works**

In a side collision the supplemental side airbags can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body on the side of the car that is struck in a side collision.

In order to assure this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye during a collision.

It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one accident and another.

Important factors include, for example, the nature ( hard or soft ) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, and etc.

The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the accident.



When the supplemental side airbag is activated, it breaks through a seam on the side of the seatback identified by the AIRBAG label. It inflates between the side trim panel and the passenger within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children. See also "Child Safety", on page 44.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates,**

- **always sit in an upright position and do not lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.**
- **always make sure that safety belts are worn properly,**
- **a child must never rest his/her head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. An inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury.**
- **see "Importance of proper seating position" in this section at pages 29 and 37 and heed all WARNINGS.**

When the system is activated, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. It could irritate your skin.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- **The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.**
- **To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the car or opening windows or doors.**
- **If you are in an accident in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- **Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes or into any cuts or scratches.**
- **If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.**

**Importance of proper seating position**

In a collision supplemental side airbags must inflate within a fraction of a second and with considerable force. In order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times. By keeping room between your body and the side of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain side collisions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to maintain an upright and proper seating position will increase the risk of personal injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates. To reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by an inflating supplemental side airbag:**

- **Never lean against the door and over the area where the side airbag is located.**
- **Never let anyone to place their hand, leg or face near the supplemental side airbag.**
- **Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand out of the window or lean against the door.**
- **Never let anyone sitting in the rear seat hold onto the sides of the front seat backrest.**

**Some other important points to know**

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

 **WARNING** continued

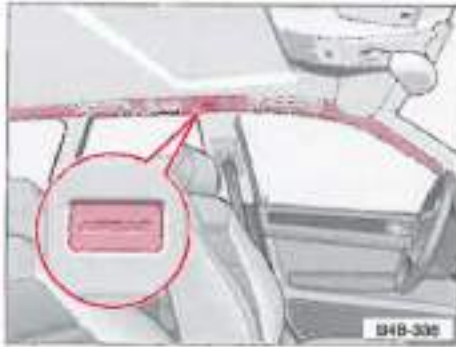
- **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "Airbag" on the seat backrests or between those areas and yourself (an umbrella, bag, etc.). Such objects can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side airbag inflates.**
- **Always prevent heavy objects from knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks. This could damage the side airbag systems and they would not deploy in case of an accident!**

 **WARNING** continued

- **Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbags during braking or sudden maneuvers. Objects near the supplemental side airbag can become projectiles and cause injury particularly when the seat is reclined.**

**Child restraints on the front seat – important things to know**

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. For additional important information and **WARNINGS** please see chapters "Front airbags" and "Child Safety," beginning on page 44.



### Head airbags (SIDE GUARD)

The **head airbags** (inflatable curtain head airbags) are located on the left and right sides above the doors underneath the headliner. These locations are marked with the word "AIRBAG".

The head airbags are inflated together with the supplemental side airbags only in severe side collisions occurring on the impact side of the vehicle.

### The head airbags will not inflate...

- if the ignition is switched off
- in frontal collisions
- in side collisions in which vehicle deceleration is not high enough
- in rear collisions
- in roll-overs.

Under some accident conditions, front and side and head airbags may inflate.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

A head airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. It is part of the overall vehicle safety system. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts. See pages 14 to 24.

### How the head airbag system works

In the event of a side-impact collision, the head airbag deploys to reduce the risk that persons sitting next to the doors will be injured if their heads strike the windows or door columns. In addition, the head airbag protects occupants from objects hurtled into the vehicle from the outside, such as broken glass.

In order to provide optimal protection for vehicle occupants, the airbag system is designed so that the head and side airbags on the accident side are always triggered together.

Therefore, the conditions under which the head airbags are deployed are identical to those for the side airbags. See page 35.





When the head airbag is triggered, it deploys from above in a downward direction, covering the side windows and door columns like a curtain – see illustration. It therefore helps to protect both the front and rear occupants at the same time.

To make certain that this additional protective functions is effective, make certain that the areas in which the airbags deploy are free of obstacles.

When the system is activated, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. It could irritate your skin.

### WARNING

- **The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.**
- **To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the car or opening windows or doors.**
- **If you are in an accident in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.**
- **Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes or into any cuts or scratches.**
- **If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.**

### Importance of proper seating position

In a collision head airbags must inflate within a fraction of a second. In order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, that driver and passengers sit properly at all times. By keeping room between your body and the side windows, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain side collisions.

### WARNING

- **To be sure the head airbags can deploy properly and can help to reduce the risk of injury in a side collision:**
  - **Never lean your head, arm or elbow against the door, windows and the area of the head airbags.**
  - **Never put your arm, hand or head out of the window.**

### Some other important points to know

Because head airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with a certain force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

#### WARNING

● **Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.**

● **Only genuine Audi roll-up sunscreens may be used on the rear doors.**

#### WARNING

● **Do not swivel the sun visors to the side if you have any objects clipped onto them (for example pens). If the airbag should deploy, you could be injured by these objects.**

● **Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Do not use any hangers when hanging clothing on the coat hooks. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with head airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.**

### Care, Service and Disposal of Airbags

Parts of the airbag system have been installed at different places on your Audi. Servicing or repairing in an area of the car could impair airbag performance.

Some general requirements for airbags must be observed to make sure the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

#### WARNING

**A damaged airbag system may not work properly in an accident. Incorrect service procedures could cause an airbag to deploy unexpectedly during service, injuring someone. To avoid damaging the airbag system, possibly causing malfunction leading to injury in an accident or during repair:**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- Do not cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel, particularly in the area of the passenger side airbag module.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover. Do not make any repairs, adjustments, or modifications to any parts of the airbag system.
- Do not modify the front bumper or vehicle body structure.

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- Never place protective seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front and rear seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi. Since the side airbags deploy out of the side of the seatback, it would not be able to deploy and protect properly.
- Do not use additional seat cushions that cover or interfere with the areas where the side airbags inflate.
- Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi Dealer.
- The airbag system must be replaced by your authorized Audi Dealer no later than 14 years after the manufacture date of your vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- The manufacture date can be found on the Safety Compliance Sticker located on the left door jamb as well as on the Vehicle Identification Label in your Maintenance booklet. It is absolutely essential to observe this date in order to assure that the system is in good working order.
- If components of the airbag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. Your authorized Audi Dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.

**WARNING continued**

- Any work on the airbag system, such as removing/installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, mobile telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary. Improper handling may result in injury.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your Audi Dealer.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced.

**Please be sure that this manual always remains with your Audi whenever you lend your vehicle to another person or if you sell it so that this and other important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.**

## Child safety

The physical principles of what happens when your car is in an accident, illustrated on pages 14–17, apply also to children. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in accidents than are adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

### WARNING

- **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.**
- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact.**

### WARNING continued

**An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag. A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accidents.**

Consult the child seat manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size.



### Infant seats

Infants up to about 9 months old (22 lbs. or 10 kg) receive the best protection in special infant carriers and child seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child's back faces the driving direction. These child seats can be used safely only on the rear seat of your Audi.

**Using a rear-facing child seat on the front seat of a vehicle equipped with an airbag will seriously injure and can even kill a child when the airbag inflates in an accident.**

#### **WARNING**

- **Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**
- **Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**

#### **WARNING continued**

- **Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if turned forward-facing.**

#### **Child restraints on the front seat – important things to know**

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

 **Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

**⚠ WARNING**

If, in exceptional circumstances you have no alternative but to install a rear facing child seat or infant carrier on the front passenger seat, deactivate the front passenger airbag prior to installing the child restraint.

Please note, that the side airbag for the front passenger seat will remain functional even if the front passenger airbag is switched off. Make sure the child restraint has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a side airbag.

Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.

**⚠ WARNING**

Babies and older children must never ride in a vehicle sitting on the lap of an adult. Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system. The strongest adult could not hold onto the child under the forces exerted in an accident.

**⚠ WARNING continued**

The child would strike the interior of the vehicle and could also be struck by the adult's body moving forward. The child and the adult could injure each other.

In a frontal accident at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant would be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury.



### Convertible seats

A child too large for an infant restraint up to 4 years old (40 lbs. or 18 kg) should be restrained in a child seat certified for their weight.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

#### WARNING

**Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child. Install forward-facing child seats on the rear seat if the front passenger airbag has not been deactivated.**

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child seat on the front seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

#### WARNING

**If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a *forward-facing* child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**

- **make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**





### Booster seats

Children up to 7 years old (55 lbs, or 25 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they should not use the vehicle safety belts.

Children of average size of about 7 years and older may use available three point combination lap and shoulder belts. It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places.

The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used.

Children age 12 and younger should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

### WARNING

**Always position the shoulder portion of the three-point belt midway over the shoulder of the child. The shoulder portion must never rest against or across the neck. It should never contact or remain in front of the face, chin, or throat. The lap belt portion of the three point belt as well as any lap belt alone must always pass as low as possible across the pelvis, never over the abdomen. Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident.**

In a collision, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially children who must ride on the front seat in exceptional situations, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between your body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, particularly the front seat. Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your car. If a child is leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, the child is more likely to be injured in a crash and will receive serious or fatal injuries if the child comes into contact with an airbag as it inflates.**



### **Safety belts and older children**

Children of average size of about 7 years of age and older may use the lap belt in exceptional circumstances if the proper use of three point belts is not possible. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let a lap belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident.**

**The lap belt portion of the three point belt as well as any lap belt alone must always pass as low as possible across the pelvis, never over the stomach or abdomen.**

Younger children should use a lap belt only in very exceptional situations and only if no child restraint system for the child's size and weight or safer alternative means of transportation of the child is available. In these exceptional situations, the use of a lap belt is better than permitting the child to remain totally unrestrained. But remember: a lap belt cannot provide the same level of protection as a proper child restraint.

**⚠ WARNING**

● **An improperly worn safety belt will not provide the best protection in an accident and may cause serious personal injury. Always make sure that children and other vehicle occupants properly wear available restraint systems. Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturers of child restraints.**

● **Commercially available child seats are required to comply with U. S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).**

● **These standards include installation requirements for using the lap portion of a combination lap-shoulder belt such as those installed in your vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

● **When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and vehicle.**

● **Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child seat must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.**

● **Improperly or inadequately installed child restraint systems can increase the risk of injury to children in accidents. Therefore, always carefully read and follow all instructions on installation and use that come with the system.**

## Securing a child seat

### Convertible Locking Retractor

The retractors for the rear seat three-point safety belts and the front passenger three-point safety belt have a convertible locking feature in addition to the emergency locking feature.

If you need to install a child seat at an outer seating position, you must first activate the convertible locking feature. Then secure the child seat by using the seat belt.



#### WARNING

- **Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**
- **Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat if the front passenger airbag has not been deactivated.**



#### WARNING

- **Forward-facing child seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child. Allow a child to travel on the front passenger's seat only in a forward-facing child restraint system specifically designed and approved by the child restraint manufacturer for use in the front with airbags. Make sure the passenger seat is in the rearmost position. It is always safer to install a child seat in the rear.**

### Activating the convertible locking retractor

- Slowly pull the belt all the way out.
- Hold on to the safety belt while securing the safety belt around the child restraint per the instructions found in the child restraint's owner's manual.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position. **Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened.**
- Guide the remaining portion of the belt back in place, allowing the retractor to take up the slack. Press the child restraint against the seat cushion as you guide the belt into the retractor so that the belt tension holds the child restraint firmly in place.
- While the safety belt is retracting, you will hear a continuous clicking noise from the retractor; that means that the convertible locking retractor has been activated.

- To convert the safety belt into standard use after the child restraint is removed, release the tongue from the buckle and allow the safety belt to fully retract again. The retractor will then operate in the normal emergency locking mode for the occupant restraint.

#### **WARNING**

**Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if your child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in an accident.**

### Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor is deactivated by unfastening the safety belt (see page 24). Allow the safety belt to retract completely to its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary three-point safety belt without the additional locking feature.

If the convertible locking feature has been inadvertently activated, the safety belt must be unfastened to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking feature is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear. The convertible locking feature must be deactivated to restore normal belt operation and greater occupant comfort.

#### **WARNING**

**Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor while the vehicle is in motion. You would not be protected at all and could suffer serious injury in an accident.**



### Child restraint anchorages for the rear seats

If your child restraint seat or seats are equipped with a tether strap you will want to use one or more of the anchor points provided on the filler panel.

Your vehicle is equipped with three child restraint anchorages (one for each rear seating position). See illustration. They have been covered with plastic caps.

#### Attaching a child restraint tether strap to the tether anchorage

- Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's usage instructions.



- Install the child restraint in the vehicle rear seating position using the LATCH\* lower anchorages according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. If the vehicle safety belts are used, activate the convertible locking retractor feature.

- Guide the tether strap **under** the rear seat head restraints (raise the head restraint slightly if necessary) and attach the tether anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage. Pull on the anchorage hook so that it is held on the anchorage by the spring catch of the hook.

- Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.



- To release the tether strap, loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Your vehicle is equipped with threaded fastening points for the installation of a LATCH anchorage system.

The LATCH system provides lower anchorage points located between the seat back and the seat cushion of the rear seat. These anchorages are provided for the outboard rear seats of your vehicle.

These LATCH anchorage points are only intended for the installation and attachment of child restraints specially certified for use with LATCH anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the LATCH anchorages can still be installed using the vehicle seat belts.

Some child restraints are certified for installation either with LATCH anchorages or the vehicle safety belt. It is recommended that such child restraints be used with the LATCH anchorages because this system will provide the easiest and more secure installation.

LATCH anchorages are designed to be used only with child restraints adapted for them.

Always refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint using the vehicle LATCH lower anchorage or safety belts. Never use the LATCH lower anchorages to attach safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.

 **WARNING**

● **Do not drive the vehicle without the head restraints provided. Head restraints are designed to help reduce injuries.**

● **The child restraint anchorages are only to be used to hold a child restraint system in its place.**

● **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses.**

● **Do not mount two child restraint seats on one anchor point.**

● **Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint which you intend to install in your Audi.**

### Side airbags and child safety

Your Audi comes equipped with 2 front airbags (driver and front passenger) and 4 side airbags (in the front and rear\*) which offer the occupants increased protection in the event of a lateral collision.

In order to assure this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within milliseconds during a collision. When the airbag is activated, it breaks through a seam on the side of the seatback identified by the AIR-BAG label, and inflates between the passenger and side trim panel at very high speed.

The side airbag inflates with such a high force, that it could injure a child seriously if his / her seating position is not proper upright, or if items are positioned in the area where the airbag inflates.

## WARNING

- To prevent serious injuries, children must always be secured in a vehicle by a child restraint system appropriate for their age and size.

- A child must never rest his / her head against the side trim panel in the area where the side airbag inflates.

An inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury!

- Never place items in the area where the side airbag inflates. This could cause serious injury!

### Note

If special situations in your family require, your authorized Audi Dealer can disconnect the rear side airbags upon your request.



### NEVER DO THIS! DANGER OF INJURY!

A child who rests his / her head to the side as shown in the illustration would probably be seriously injured by the side airbag when it inflates.



### THIS IS THE RIGHT WAY!

The illustration shows a child who is properly secured in a restraint system appropriate to the child's weight, size and age, and installed on the correct seating position on the rear seat. The illustration shows also that there is enough space between the side airbag and the child.

The side airbag can properly inflate and offer optimum protection to the child in a broad range of side accidents.



## Keys



Your Audi comes with four keys and a plastic tag.

### WARNING

**Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or harm the vehicle. Always lock all doors and take the key.**

All keys can be inserted into locks either way.



### A – Folding master keys with remote control

To fold the key out, press the release button (arrow).

To fold the key back in, press the release button again.

The master key fits all the locks on your vehicle.

The function of the remote control is described on page 59.

To replace batteries see page 57.

### B – Valet key

The valet key has a workshop symbol on it and fits only the driver's door and ignition lock.

If you have to leave a key with somebody else, it may be advisable to give them this key only.

### C – Emergency key

This key fits all locks on the vehicle.

The emergency key is only for temporary use if the vehicle key should be lost or misplaced.

### WARNING

**Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in starting of the engine or use of vehicle systems such as the power windows, etc. which could result in serious injury.**

## D – Tag

This tag gives the key number.

### For your protection against theft:

- Record the key number and keep it in a safe place, such as your wallet. **Do not keep it in the vehicle.**
- If you should lose a key, provide your authorized Audi Dealer with the key number to obtain a duplicate key.

### Note

If you open the driver's door with the key left in the ignition lock, a **chime** will sound. This is your reminder to remove the key and lock the door.

## Electronic immobilizer

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic immobilizer.

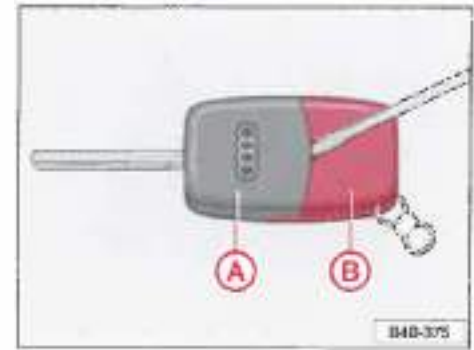
With the help of an electronic component in the key head, the immobilizer prevents your vehicle from being started by unauthorized persons. See page 124.

Therefore, the engine can only be started using the factory-equipped key.

If you lose a key, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the lost key disabled.

### Note

In some cases, you may not be able to start your vehicle if an ignition key of a different vehicle make is also located on your set of keys.



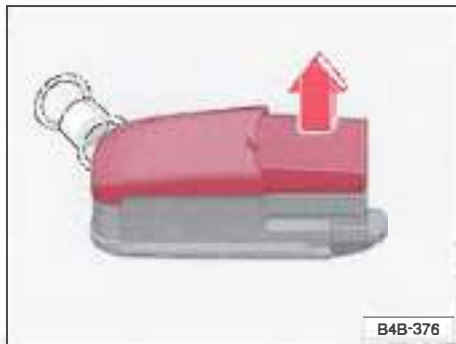
## Changing batteries master key

Both batteries are located in the cover of the key base (B).

We recommend that you have the batteries changed by your authorized Audi Dealer. However, if you choose to change the batteries yourself, follow these steps:

Unfold the key.

Using a screwdriver, carefully pry the key stem (A) from the key base (B).



Remove the cover from the key base (arrow).

Remove the dead batteries.




- Install the new batteries.

When installing the batteries, make sure the side of the battery with the "+" symbol on it is facing down. See illustration. A picture on the inside of the lid shows you the correct battery position.

- Take the lid with the installed batteries, place it over the key base and press the two parts together.
- Place the key base on the key stem and press both parts together.

### Notes

- The replacement batteries must be identical in size and specification to the original batteries provided.
- Spare batteries are available at your authorized Audi Dealer.

 **Dispose of dead batteries properly so as not to pollute the environment. Many stores that sell batteries will accept dead batteries for recycling or proper disposal.**

- If you cannot lock or unlock your vehicle after you have changed the batteries, then the system must be re-synchronized. See page 60.

## Power locks

The power locking system in your vehicle incorporates:

- **Central locking function**
- **Remote control feature**
- **Anti-theft alarm system**  
for detail see page 67.

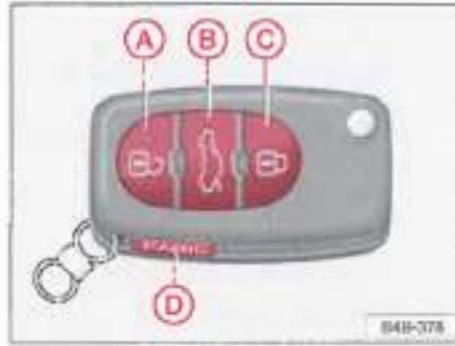
You can either lock your vehicle using the **remote control** in your folding master key or by using the **mechanical key**.

Activating the power locking system locks or unlocks all doors, the rear lid and fuel filler flap simultaneously.

The anti-theft alarm system switches on or off whenever you lock or unlock the vehicle with the remote control or key.

When locking the vehicle the horn of the anti-theft alarm system will sound briefly if all doors, hood and rear lid are closed properly.

The **selective unlock feature** makes it possible to open just the driver's door including the fuel filler flap.



### Operating locks using remote control

#### Unlocking and locking (buttons A and C)

- **To unlock just the driver's door** press button **A one time** for approximately 1 second.

**To unlock all the doors and the rear lid** press button **A two times**.

All four turn signal lights will flash twice when the car is unlocked.

After unlocking the vehicle, you have 60 seconds to open a door or the rear lid. If you wait longer than 60 seconds, the vehicle will automatically lock itself once again. The alarm system will be reactivated.

- **To lock** the vehicle press button **C** for approximately 1 second.

To confirm that the car is locked all four turn signal lights will flash one time.

#### Remote rear lid release (button B)

**To unlock rear lid only**, press button **B** for at least 1 second. Then open lid within 60 seconds.

How to unlock rear lid using the key see page 63.

#### PANIC switch (button D)

Bypushing the red button **D** you will engage the "panic function." The horn sounds and the turn signals will flash.

Press button **D** again to switch off the "panic function."

Remember – the panic function can be seen and heard by other motorists and / or persons near you.

**Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation.**



### WARNING

**Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle especially with access to the remote control. The remote control could be used to lock the doors delaying access to the children in an emergency.**

### Resetting the remote control

If your vehicle will not lock using the remote control; it could be that the code for the control unit and key needs to be reset. This can occur if you frequently use the remote control while standing outside of the effective range.

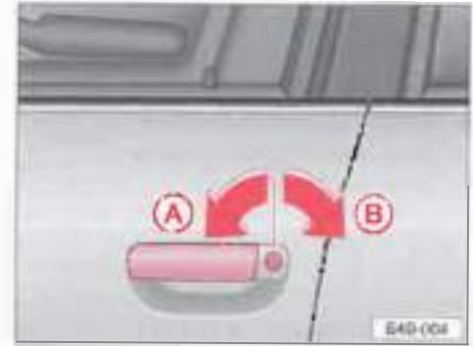
### Resetting procedure

- 1 - To synchronize, press button **A** or button **C** on the remote control **one time**.
- 2 - Then, within **one minute**, lock or unlock the driver's door with the **master key**.

The system is now functional.

### Operating locks using the key

- **To lock and unlock** the vehicle from the outside, turn the key in the lock of the driver's door or the rear lid. You can also lock and unlock the vehicle by turning the key in the rear lid lock. See page 63.
- Turn the key **one time only** to unlock (A) either the driver's door or respectively the rear lid.
- Turn the key **two times** to unlock **all** vehicle doors and the rear lid.



### Convenience close / open feature

You can also close any open windows and / or the power roof\* when you lock your car **with the key**.

Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door, turn it to the lock position (B) and hold until the windows and sunroof are completely closed. The automatic close function will stop immediately if the key is released. **Always make sure the windows are not obstructed.**

To open all windows: insert your key into the lock of the driver's door, turn it to the open position (A) and then hold it in this position.

## Unlocking the vehicle and opening doors

### To unlock and open door from outside

- Press unlock button on your remote control twice or turn the key in the lock of the driver's door or the rear lid two times to the unlock position.
- Open doors by pulling the outside door handle.

When you unlock your vehicle:

- the locking knobs in all doors will rise,
- the anti-theft alarm system is turned off,
- the anti-theft alarm system readiness lights in the front doors goes out,
- the vehicle interior lights come on for about 30 seconds. See page 171.
- the seat and mirror memory is activated and the driver's seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions are retrieved. See pages 74 and 83 for more details.

### To unlock and open door from inside

Each door can be **unlocked** independently of the power locking system from the inside by pulling the inside door handle:

Pulling the handle **one time** raises the locking knob only.

Pulling the handle **two times** opens the door.

## Locking the vehicle

### To lock vehicle from outside

- Close all windows and doors properly.
- Press lock button on your remote control or turn the key in the lock of the driver's door or the rear lid to the lock position.

When you lock the vehicle:

- all doors and the rear lid are locked, (the locking knobs in all doors will lower),
- the anti-theft alarm system is turned on,
- the vehicle interior lights turn off, and
- the anti-theft alarm system readiness lights near the locking knobs in the front doors will start to blink.

### To lock vehicle from inside

You can lock the vehicle from inside by

- depressing the locking knobs in the doors or by
- pressing the lower part of power locking switch. See next column.

### Please note:

The anti-theft alarm system will not be turned on when you lock the vehicle from inside.

**If the driver's door is open, or not closed properly,** you will not be able to lock this door.



### Power locking switch

The entire vehicle can be locked / unlocked from the inside by using the power locking switch in the driver's door.

- To **lock all doors**, the rear lid and the fuel filler flap simultaneously, press lower part of power locking switch (see illustration).
- To **unlock all doors**, the rear lid and the fuel filler flap simultaneously, press the upper part of the switch.

The power locking switch can also be used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the driver's door is open **and** the ignition key is removed from the steering lock.

### WARNING

- If you use the power locking switch with the doors closed, remember that all the vehicle doors will lock.

**Locking doors from the inside can help prevent inadvertent door opening during an accident and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.**

- **Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.**



### Child safety lock for rear doors

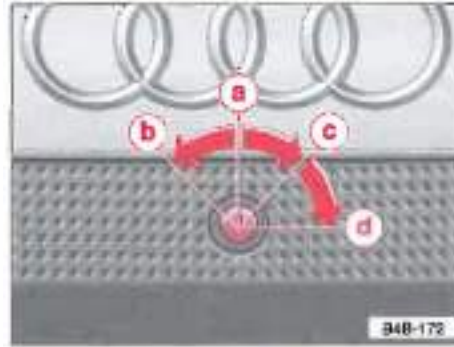
To prevent children in the back seat from accidentally opening the rear doors, a safety mechanism is provided on each rear door.

#### A - Child lock disengaged

For the comfort and convenience of adult rear seat passengers be sure to disengage the child lock (position A) when no longer needed.

**B – Child lock engaged**

When the child lock is engaged (position B), the inside door handle is now locked and you can only open the door from the outside. The locking knob must be raised in order to open the door.

**Rear lid**

The power locking system can be operated by turning the **master or emergency key** in the lock on the rear lid.

**Lock positions:****Position a:**

With the key slot in the vertical position, the rear lid can be **locked and unlocked** by:

- the power locking system using the remote control or the key (see page 59).
- the power locking switch (see page 62).

You can **unlock** the lid by pressing the remote rear lid release button on your key.

**Position b:**

● **To unlock rear lid and all doors:** Turn key from vertical position (a) **twice** to position (b).

**To unlock rear lid only:** Turn key from vertical position (a) **once** to position (b).

If the rear lid has been unlocked separately, the power locking system will lock the rear lid again after 5 seconds regardless of the lid's position.

Therefore, **never** lay your keys down in the luggage compartment.

**Position c:**

● **To lock rear lid and all doors:** Turn key from position (a) to position (c).

**Position d:**

With key slot in horizontal position (d), **the rear lid remains locked** when the power locking system is actuated. This provision has been made to facilitate permanent locking of the rear lid when you leave your vehicle in a public garage or workshop. Take the master key with you and leave the secondary key with attendant.





### Opening and closing the rear lid

**To open** the lid when the key slot is vertical, pull one of the two concealed handles (see illustration, arrow) and raise the lid.

**To close** the lid, pull it down and shut it firmly.

There is a recess in the interior trim of the lid to make it easier to pull down.

### **WARNING**

● **After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.**

**This is especially important if you are travelling with a child sitting on the additional rear child seat bench\*.**

● **To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area, because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**

### **WARNING continued**

● **Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid, as well as the vehicle doors, closed when not in use.**

**Keep the rear lid locked at all times to prevent unauthorized access to the vehicle.**

For further information see "Luggage compartment" on page 88.



### Remote rear lid release



You can open the rear lid from inside the vehicle. This feature is very useful when, for example, the lock cylinder in the rear lid has frozen.

- To unlock rear lid, open driver's door and press switch in the door pillar (see illustration).
- To open luggage compartment raise rear lid.

The remote rear lid release is deactivated automatically if you lock the rear lid. This enables the driver to lock the luggage compartment permanently with the key, if access by other persons is not wanted.

For example, if you should take your vehicle to a workshop, lock the luggage compartment separately with the master key (lock in the horizontal position). We recommend you use the valet key if you have to leave your vehicle at the workshop.



### Child safety lock in the rear lid\*

Vehicles which have child seat bench are equipped also with a child safety lock in the rear lid.

You can activate or deactivate the lock by moving the lever at the bottom of the rear lid.

**A** – Child safety lock **deactivated**

**B** – Child safety lock **activated**.

When the child safety lock is activated, the handle on the inside of the rear lid is blocked. You can only open the rear lid from the outside.



**With the vehicle locked** and child safety lock activated, you can also open the rear lid in an emergency without having to use a key.

To do this, a passenger in the car must lift the lever on the inside of the rear lid (arrow). Then the rear lid can be opened from the outside.

### General notes

#### Power locking system

- In the event of an accident **with airbag deployment** all locked doors will be automatically unlocked to give access to the vehicle occupants from the outside.
- If the power locking system should fail, you can still open **the fuel tank flap** in an emergency, see page 224.

#### Remote control function

- The remote control system can be affected by other systems operating in the same frequency range close to the vehicle, such as mobile telephones, television broadcasting stations, etc.
- Do not use the remote control if you are inside the car, otherwise you may unintentionally lock the vehicle, and then you would set off the anti-theft alarm when you try to start the engine or open a door. If the ignition is switched on, the remote control system is deactivated.
- Reactivating remote control. If you replace a lost key, or if any repair and / or exchange work is performed on the receiver, an authorized Audi Dealer must reactivate the system. Only then can the keyless remote system be used again.

### ● Certification

The remote control device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- 1 - this device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2 - this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The manufacturer is not responsible for ANY RADIO OR TV Interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system triggers an acoustic alarm and switches on the emergency flasher if it senses unauthorized interference with the vehicle.

When the vehicle is locked the alarm system monitors and protects the following parts of the vehicle:

- engine compartment
- luggage compartment
- doors
- factory installed radio
- passenger compartment
- ignition.

The alarm system is switched on or off whenever you lock or unlock the vehicle. Simply turn the key to the lock or unlock position or use the remote control.

The system is activated about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, and the indicator lights on the front door window sills start flashing.

The horn sounds briefly when the car is locked to confirm that the alarm system is operative and that all doors, hood and rear lid are properly closed. If the horn does not sound, or the indicator lights do not flash, check all doors, rear lid and hood and close them properly. The horn will also sound if the door, lid and hood are closed when the system is already switched on.

The rear lid can be opened separately even when the system is active. When the rear lid is closed the luggage compartment will again be included in the alarm circuit.

When the system is switched on the alarm will be triggered if one of the doors, the engine hood or the rear lid are opened, or if the ignition is switched on or the radio removed.

When the alarm is triggered the horn sounds and all four turn signals flash simultaneously. The engine cannot be started until the system is switched off with the key or the remote control.

If the alarm has sounded one time, and then the vehicle is forced open again (for example, someone tries to forcibly open a door, and then tries to force open the rear lid), the signal will sound once again.

You can also trigger the alarm by pressing the **PANiC switch** on your remote control to alert other people in case of emergency or when in another difficult situation. The alarm can be switched off by pressing the PANIC switch again.

### Warning lights

After you lock the vehicle, the warning light on the window sills will blink quickly first for 30 seconds and will then blink slowly. This is to let you know that the anti-theft alarm system is activated, including the interior movement sensors.

If the warning lights come on continuously for about 30 seconds instead of flashing when the vehicle is locked, this indicates that the interior movement sensor is defective.



### Switching off the interior movement sensors

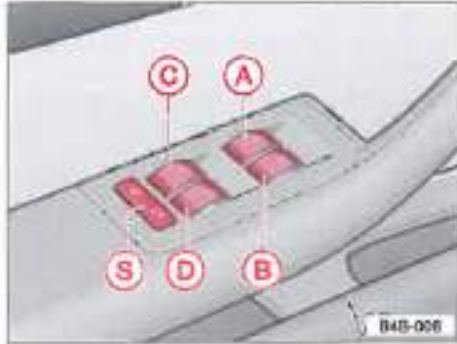
You should switch off the interior movement sensors if there is the possibility that the alarm system could be set off, for example by a pet left in the vehicle.

- Press the switch in the door pillar (see illustration). The indicator light in the switch will come on. The indicator light on the window sills will come on for approximately 3 seconds. This verifies that the interior movement sensors have been deactivated. The sensors will be reactivated when you unlock and lock the vehicle again.

- Lock the vehicle.

The indicator lights in the door pillar will blink quickly for approximately 3 seconds at first. Then, after approximately 30 seconds, the light will flash slowly.

## Power windows



The switches are located in the driver's door. Also, the front passenger's door and each rear door has its own power window switch.

If the respective switch is pushed or pulled the window will open or close.

- Switches **A** and **B** operate the front door windows.
- Switches **C** and **D** operate the rear windows.
- Safety switch **S**

The safety switch (**S**) in the armrest on the driver's door can turn off the rear power windows. This feature has been provided for the safety of small children riding in the rear of the vehicle.

A symbol lights up in the safety switch when the switches in the rear doors are deactivated.

Normally, the power windows can be opened and closed only with the ignition on. However, when the ignition is off the windows can still be operated by means of the control switches as long as the driver's and front passenger's doors are closed. When either door is opened, the power window operation will be deactivated.

### WARNING

● **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in starting of the engine and use of vehicle systems such as power windows, etc. which could result in serious injury.**

### WARNING continued

- **Remember also that the power windows will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **Be careful when closing the windows. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**
- **Switch off the power to the rear windows – if necessary – using the safety switch S.**
- **Always remove the ignition key whenever you leave your vehicle.**
- **If you lock your vehicle from the outside, no one especially children should remain in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.**
- **Do not stick anything on the windows or the windshield that may interfere with the driver's vision.**

### Opening and closing

#### Front door windows

● **To open** the driver's or the front passenger's door window push down the front of switch A or B briefly. The windows will open automatically (**one-touch down feature**).

If you push or pull the front of switch A respectively B while the window is opening, the window will stop where it is.

**To close**, pull up the front of switch A respectively B briefly. The windows will close automatically (**one-touch up feature**).

If you push or pull the front of switch A respectively B while the window is opening, the window will stop where it is.

The automatic open / close feature for the front door windows is only available when the ignition is switched on.



#### Rear door windows

● **To open** the window push down the front of switch briefly. The window will open automatically (**one-touch down feature**).

If you push or pull the front of switch while the window is opening, the window will stop where it is.

● **To close** the window pull up front of switch briefly. The window will close automatically (**one-touch up feature**).

If you push or pull the front of switch while the window is closing, the window will stop where it is.

The automatic open / close feature for the rear door windows is only available when the ignition is switched on.

## Convenience close / open feature

For the convenience of the driver all windows can be closed / opened centrally with the ignition key while locking / unlocking the vehicle:

### Closing windows

Insert key into the **lock of driver's door**, turn and hold in the locking position until all windows are closed. The automatic close function will stop immediately if the key is released.



### WARNING

- **Be careful when closing the windows.**
- **Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result.**

### Opening windows

Insert key into the **lock of driver's door**, turn the key and hold in the unlocking position until all windows are opened.

This feature enables the driver, to let the heat escape from the interior of the car, after having parked in direct sunlight.

The convenience close / open feature is not available when locking the vehicle using the remote control.

### Note

If you disconnect and then reconnect the battery, the convenience open and close feature will not work.

The following steps describe how to reactivate the convenience open / close feature after reconnecting the battery:

- Close the window completely by lifting the power window switch and holding.
- Release the switch and then lift it again for a second.
- The convenience feature is now activated.



## Mirrors

Adjust the outside and inside mirrors before driving and after adjusting your seat to proper driving position. It is important for safe driving that you have good vision to the rear.

### Inside day-night mirror

#### Manual anti-glare adjustment

You can adjust the day-night mirror from clear daylight visibility to non-glare visibility at night by moving the lever at the bottom of the mirror.

To ensure the best possible anti-glare effect, the lever on the lower edge of the mirror should be pointing forwards when the basic setting is made.

Daylight driving – lever to front

Night driving – lever to rear.

#### Automatic anti-glare adjustment\*

When the ignition is switched on the interior mirror will darken automatically depending on the amount of light shining into the car from the rear (e. g. headlights).

When you move the selector lever / gearshift lever into Reverse **R** or when you switch the interior lights on, the inside mirror will return to its original position (dimming effect off).

The mirror will return to the original position (i. e. not anti-dazzle) when the selector lever / gearshift lever is moved to position **R**.

### Outside mirrors

Adjust the outside mirrors so that the side of your own vehicle can just be seen. This setting ensures the best possible field of view, and in addition it serves as an instant check on the mirror setting.

#### Self-dimming day / night outside mirrors

The dimming of the outside mirrors is controlled by the inside day / night mirror.

The dimming of the outside mirrors works only properly and without any interference, if the rear window shade\* is rolled up and / or the light shining on the inside mirror is not blocked by other objects.

## WARNING

● The right hand outside mirror has a convex (curved) surface. Remember that vehicles or other objects seen in a convex mirror will appear smaller and farther away than when seen in a flat mirror. If you use this mirror to estimate distances of following vehicles when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause an accident.

● Whenever possible, use the inside mirror to determine the actual distance and size of vehicles or other objects seen in the convex mirror.



### Adjusting the outside mirrors

With the ignition on, both outside mirrors can be adjusted.

Turn the knob to switch over between the left and right outside mirrors.

L – left-hand mirror

R – right-hand mirror

0 – off

A – Folding back both outside mirrors\*

It's a good idea to fold the outside mirrors – for example, when you must park the car in tight quarters.

Press the knob in the appropriate direction (arrows) to move the mirror surface.

### Note

● If the electrical adjustment of the mirror should not respond, adjust the mirror by hand by pushing lightly on the edge of the mirror glass.

● At low outside temperatures the **heated outside mirrors** are activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

### **Folding down of the outside mirror passenger's side<sup>1)</sup>**

When you move the selector lever / gearshift lever into R (Reverse), the outside mirror on the passenger's side will tilt slightly downwards, provided you have switched to the right-hand outside mirror.

This makes it possible to see the edge of the curb when parking your vehicle. The mirror will return to its original position as soon as you move the selector lever / gearshift lever out of R (Reverse), or if you switch the remote control back to the driver's outside mirror.

### **Memory\***

The setting of the outside mirrors is automatically stored in the memory for the driver's seat adjustment together with the seat position.

Memory function for driver's seat and outside mirrors see page 81.

Adjust the mirrors as described and then store this setting together with your seating position memory.

<sup>1)</sup> Only on vehicles with memory for driver's seat.

## Head restraints

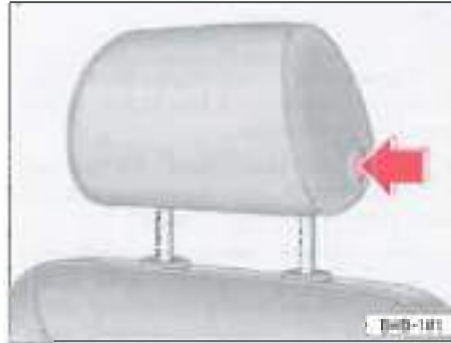
Position the head restraints according to the occupant's height. Properly positioned head restraints, together with the use of safety belts offer effective protection in most accident situations.



### WARNING

**Head restraints are designed to help reduce injuries in an accident. Do not drive the vehicle without the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.**

For maximum protection, the upper edge of the head restraints should be **at least** at eye level, or higher.



### Height adjustment (front seats)

The front seats are equipped with head restraints with a locking / unlocking feature.

- To lower the head restraint, press the release button to the first stop (see illustration, arrow) and push the head restraint down.
- To raise, grasp the head restraint with both hands and pull up.

### Height adjustment (rear seats)

For height adjustment, grasp firmly with both hands and pull up or push down.

## Front seats

The correct positioning of the seats is important:

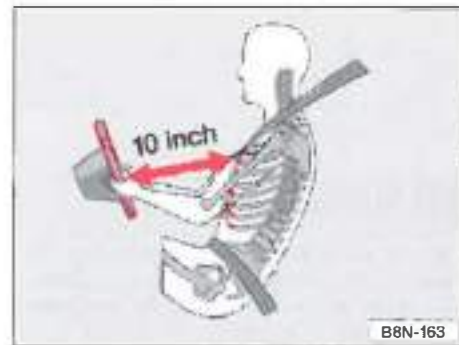
- so that you can reach all the controls on the vehicle quickly and safely;
- so that you can drive or ride relaxed and help reduce fatigue;
- **and for maximum protection offered by the safety belts and air-bag system.**

Therefore, always adjust the position of the seat as described on the following pages. Remember to adjust the seats before fastening the safety belts and before driving off. Always be sure to follow these general guidelines:



### WARNING

- **Always sit as far away from the steering wheel and the instrument panel as possible.**
- **Never sit less than 10 inches (25 cm.) from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.**
- **Do not adjust seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**
- **Passengers must always keep their feet on the floor whenever the vehicle is moving. Never place feet on the dashboard or on top of the seats. In an accident, serious personal injury can result from an improper seating position.**



### Driver's seat

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is unfolding, the driver must not sit any closer to the steering wheel than necessary and always properly wear available three point belts.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat as follows:

- adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals all the way while keeping your knee slightly bent.
- adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
- adjust the steering wheel so that the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel must be **at least** 10 inches (25 cm) or more.  
See illustration on previous page.

**WARNING**

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**

**Front passenger's seat**

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is unfolding, the adult front seat passenger must not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always properly wear available three point belts.

We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat as follows:

- backrest upright (**never** reclined)
- place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat
- adjust the passenger's seat as far as possible to the rear of the fore and aft adjustment range.

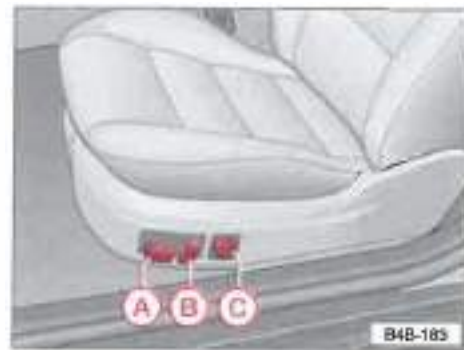
### WARNING

- Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. If the airbag inflates and your feet are on the instrument panel or on the seat, you could receive serious personal injuries to the legs, hips and even the head if the airbag inflates.

For safety information on transporting children on the front passenger seat be sure to read all the information on "Infant seats, Convertible seats and Booster seats", see page 44.

### WARNING

- To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident, front seat passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts offer protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an out-of-position safety belt.
- Never store items under the seats. Loose objects can interfere with the seat latching mechanism and can also cause personal injury in an accident.



### Seat adjustment

The front seat adjustment control switches are located on the outboard side of each seat. The controls also work with the ignition off.

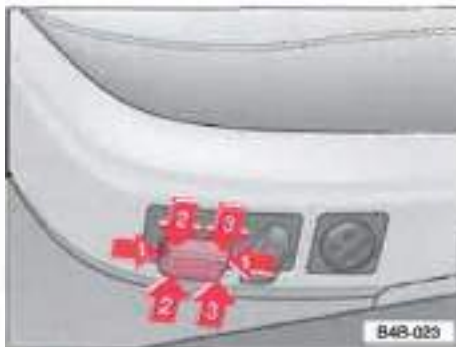
- A – Seat adjustment
- B – Seatback adjustment
- C – Lumbar support

Before adjusting your seat there are some important considerations to keep in mind.

- To prevent interference with the seat adjustment, never store anything under the seats.
- The front seats should be adjusted before fastening the safety belts.
- The position of the driver's seat you find most comfortable can be stored in the memory. See page 81 for details.

### WARNING

**Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition key removed, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury.**



#### Seat adjustment

Press the switch as indicated by the arrows to move the seat.

- 1 - moves seat back/forward
- 2 - raises/lowers seat at the front
- 3 - raises/lowers seat at the rear
- 2 and 3 together – raises/lowers whole seat



#### Seatback adjustment

Press the switch as indicated by the arrows to adjust the backrest.

- forward:                      backrest further upright
- to the rear:                      backrest further reclined





### **Curvature adjustment**

forward

– thicker

to the rear

– flatter

### **Height adjustment**

up

– higher

down

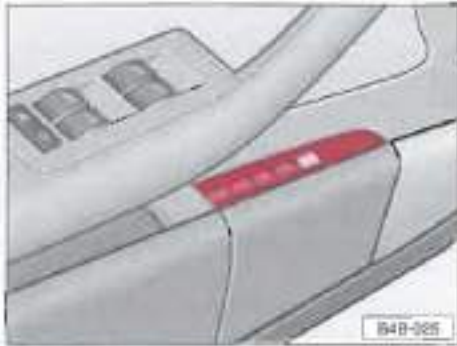
– lower

### **Lumbar support**

By pressing the switch in the appropriate direction the padding of the lumbar support can be adjusted in curvature and height.

This feature will give you more or less support for the natural curve of your lower back to minimize fatigue, especially during long trips.

## Memory for front seats\*



You can store and recall 3 different seat positions for the driver and front passenger seats using the memory buttons located in the front doors. When you store the seat position for the driver's seat, you can also set and store the position of the outside mirrors and steering column position\*.

The system works with the ignition switched on or off.

### Memory for driver's seat

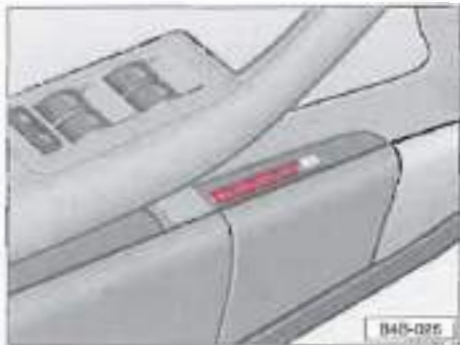
The "STOP" button must be depressed in order to store and recall the required settings.

#### Memorizing seat, mirrors and steering wheel\* positions and adjustments

- Adjust the seat.
  - Adjust both outside mirrors (see page 72).
  - Adjust steering wheel (see page 99).
  - Press "Memory" button and hold. At the same time press one of the three numbered recall buttons for at least 1 second.
  - Release the buttons.
- The positions are now assigned to that particular button and stored in the memory.

#### Notes

- If you memorize a new setting, the previous setting on that button will be erased.
- We recommend that you begin with button 1, and assign each subsequent driver a particular button. This is especially important for optimum utilization of the remote control.
- If the vehicle battery is disconnected, all memorized setting will be erased.



### How to coordinate the remote control to a memory button

You can use the remote control to recall an individual seating position stored in memory.

In order to recall stored seat and mirror positions from the memory with the remote control, a specific memory button must be assigned to the transmitter units.

The first factory provided transmitter unit should be programmed to memory button 1 and the second transmitter unit to button 2. If required, you can order an additional remote control transmitter from an authorized Audi Dealer, which should then be programmed to memory button 3.

Assigning stored settings to the remote control:

After you have stored all settings under a memory button, you can assign this setting to the remote control.

- Briefly press the memory button to be coordinated with the remote control.

Wait until the seat, the outside mirrors and the steering wheel have reached their stored position.

- Press the same memory button a second time and hold while depressing the **unlock button** on the remote control. Release the memory button after 2 seconds.

The memory button on the seat is now coordinated with the remote control.

### Notes

- If you coordinate a remote control to a 'new' memory button on the driver's seat, the coordination with the 'old' button will be erased.
- The coordination between the remote control and a memory button will remain in effect even if the settings under the memory button on the driver's seat have been changed.
- In addition, it is possible to erase a single key assignment to a specific memory button.

Press and hold the memory button while pressing the unlock button on the master key with remote control for about 10 seconds. Then release the memory button after about 2 seconds.

### Retrieving seat position and stored adjustments from memory

The settings stored can be retrieved both with the remote control and with the memory buttons.

#### – Retrieving using the remote control

When you unlock the vehicle with the remote control the outside mirrors automatically adjust. Then, after you open the driver's door, the driver's seat also automatically adjusts.

The seat will automatically adjust itself if you open the driver's door within 10 minutes after unlocking the vehicle.

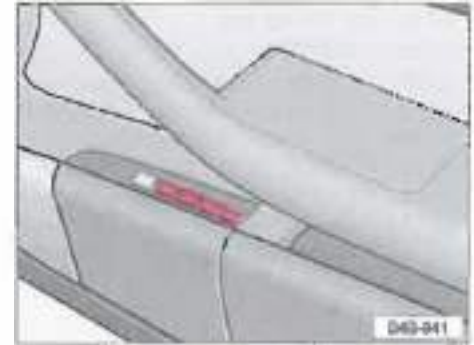
If you wait longer than 10 minutes to open the driver's door, after unlocking the car, then you must use the memory button to recall the seat position.

#### – Retrieving using the memory buttons

### WARNING

**For your safety, use the recall feature only when the vehicle is not moving.**

- With the driver's door **open**, depress and release the desired memory button. The seat and outside mirrors will automatically adjust to the stored position.
- If the door has been **closed**, or if the door has been left opened for more than 10 minutes, you must then depress and hold the memory button until the seat and outside mirrors reach their stored position.



### Memory for front passenger's seat\*

The "STOP" button must be depressed in order to store and recall the required settings.

#### Memorizing seat adjustments

- Adjust the seat.
- Press "Memory" button and hold. At the same time press one of the three numbered recall buttons for at least 1 second.
- Release the buttons.

The positions are now assigned to that particular button and stored in the memory.

### Retrieving using the memory buttons

- With the passenger's door **open**, depress and release the desired memory button. The seat will automatically adjust to the stored position.
- If the door has been **closed**, you must then depress and hold the memory button until the seat has reached its stored position.

#### Note

You can not recall the stored seat adjustment for the front passenger's seat using the remote control in the master key.

### Emergency Off

**In an emergency, you can interrupt any retrieval procedure by**

- pressing the **"STOP"** button (see illustration on page 81 and 83), or
- tapping one of the memory buttons.

Pushing the "ON/OFF" button to the OFF position only switches off the Memory. The stored settings will not be erased.

It's a good idea to turn the Memory off if the vehicle is going to be used temporarily by a driver whose driving position will not be memorized.

The advantage is that the personal settings that have already been memorized will remain intact and will not change each time the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control.

#### Note

The memory function is switched off when the STOP button is pressed. The word "OFF" lights up if the headlights are switched on. However, the programmed seat, outside mirrors and steering wheel positions remain stored in the memory.

## Center armrest



The front center armrest can be adjusted to various positions as required.

To adjust the position of the armrest, press the button at the front (arrow A) and pull the armrest down. Then lift the armrest gradually until it engages in the desired position.

### WARNING

**When folded down, the armrest can restrict the driver's movement. When driving in conditions that may call for quick maneuvers, fold up the armrest. This will allow you to react more quickly to avoid an accident.**

To open the storage compartment in the armrest, lift the release button (arrow B).

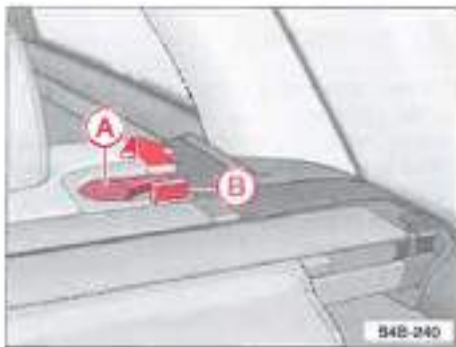
Armrest for car telephone\* – see page 190.

## Rear seats

### General hints

#### **WARNING**

- **Do not allow passengers to occupy the rear load surface while the vehicle is in motion. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained.**
- **Do not let anyone ride in the vehicle without the head restraints provided. Head restraints help reduce injuries.**
- **Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in an accident or sudden maneuver and injure occupants. Always store articles in the luggage compartment and use the fastening eyes, especially when the rear seat backs have been folded down.**



You can fold the split rear seatback forward, either individually or both seatbacks together, to increase the space in the luggage compartment.

### Folding backrest down

- Push forward release lever (A) in direction of arrow.
- Fold the backrest down.

### Returning backrest to upright position

Push rear seat backrest up until it engages. The red marking next to the release lever (B) should no longer be visible.

**When folding the backrest back into place, make sure the safety belt doesn't get caught, because it can be damaged and weakened.**



#### WARNING

- **The backrest must always be securely latched so that the safety belts can work properly to help protect all back seat passengers.**
- **Objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.**
- **Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.**
- **Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts periodically.**  
**If belts show damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors, have them replaced.**



## Luggage compartment

### Increasing size of the luggage compartment

You can fold the backrest forward to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

### Transporting heavy objects

Transporting heavy objects can change the way your vehicle behaves. For best handling under these conditions, distribute loads evenly.

Always place heavy cargo as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment. When transporting heavy objects, drive slowly and avoid sudden maneuvers.

#### **WARNING**

● **Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight ratings can change the way the vehicle handles and could result in accidents, personal injury, and vehicle damage.**

#### **WARNING** continued

- **Do not allow passengers to occupy the rear load surface while the vehicle is in motion. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained.**
- **Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in an accident or sudden maneuver and injure occupants. Always store articles in the luggage compartment and use the fastening eyes, especially when the rear seat backs have been folded down. In particular, when traveling on rough roads or rugged terrain, make certain that all luggage and other items are stowed in the luggage compartment and that they are secured in such a way that they cannot shift.**

#### **WARNING** continued

- **To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area, because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**
- **If you must drive with the rear lid open under exceptional circumstances always take the following precautions to help reduce the risk of deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust system from being drawn into the passengers compartment:**
  - open all of the windows
  - turn off the air recirculation switch
  - select maximum fan speed.

**Air circulation**

Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through slots in the trim panel on the left and right side of the luggage compartment. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.

**Fastening eyes**

There are four fastening "eyes" in the luggage compartment (arrows). Use these eyes to secure objects.

**Elastic cargo net**

The cargo net prevents light objects from sliding around.

Fix the hooks onto the fastening eyes.



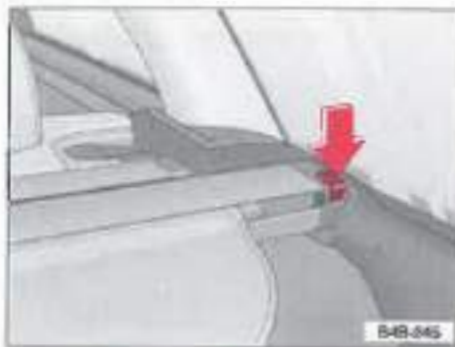
### Luggage compartment cover

#### Pulling out

Pull the cover toward the back of the vehicle. Set the ends of the rod into the retainer in the trim panels.

#### Retracting

Pull the rod upwards out of its retainers and slowly slide the cover forward.



#### Removing

Push the right button downwards (arrow), and lift the luggage compartment cover out.

#### Installing

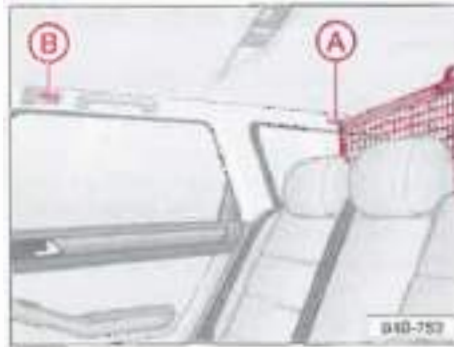
Insert the cover in the retainers, push downwards and let the catches engage.

### WARNING

- The luggage compartment cover between the rear seat and the rear window must not be used for storage, even for small and light items.
- During sudden stops, stored articles may fly forward causing injury to vehicle occupants.
- Even small objects can obstruct the rear vision necessary for safe driving.
- When you install the luggage compartment cover, make sure the safety belts for the rear facing child bench\* do not get caught, otherwise you could damage them.

## Partition net

The partition net can be used either with the backrests in the normal position, or when they are folded down.



### Pulling out net

Open the partition net cover. Pull the net up and engage it in the upper retainers (A) on the roof frame.

With the rear seat back folded down the partition net can be engaged in the front retainers (B).

### Retracting net

Disengage the net from the retainers and let it roll up slowly. Close the partition net cover.



The partition net can only be **removed and installed** with the backrests tilted forward – see page 86.

### Removing net

Open the right-hand rear door and pull the partition net about 2 in. (5 cm) towards the right-hand side of the vehicle and lift it out of the attachment rails.

### Installing net

Place the partition net in the slots in the attachment rails and push it in towards the left side of the vehicle as far as it will go.

### Rear facing child seat bench\*

Two children starting at 3 years of age can sit on the rear facing child seat bench. The child must not be taller than 50 in. (1.3 m) and must not weigh more than 78 lbs (36 kg).

**Children must always wear safety belts!**

Activating the child safety lock – see page 65.

#### **WARNING**

- **Do not place any other child seats or child carriers on rear facing child seat bench.**
- **For safety reason, never remove the head restraints on the child seat bench.**
- **The seatback for the rear seat bench must always be in its upright position and locked securely in place. You shouldn't be able to see the red marking on the release latches – see page 87.**

#### **Installing / setting up the child seat bench**

You must remove the luggage compartment cover, the net and the round cover caps in the cargo area floor cover before installing the child seat bench. The cover caps, which are normally inserted in the mounting for the child seat bench on the cargo floor cover, can be stowed on the bottom side of the removable cargo area floor cover.



- 1 - Remove the child seat bench from the bag in which it is stored. Insert both mounting pins for the child seat bench in the mountings provided for them in the cargo area floor.
- 2 - Turn both levers toward the inside to secure the seat bench.

Remove the hinged cargo area floor cover and stow in the bag. The bag can then be stowed between the backrest of the child bench seat and the rear passenger seat.



- 3 - Extend the folding legs on the left and right sides.
- 4 - Press the right-hand safety latch in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- 5 - Fold down the seat cushion and make certain it latches securely into the cargo floor.
- 6 - Fold down the arm rests.



Remove the safety belt from the bracket on the door trim panel and inset it into the belt guide on the top of the back rest.

### **Wearing the safety belts**

**Make sure the safety belt never loops above or below the side arm rests!**

Wearing the safety belts – see page 14.

Adjusting the head restraints– see page 75.



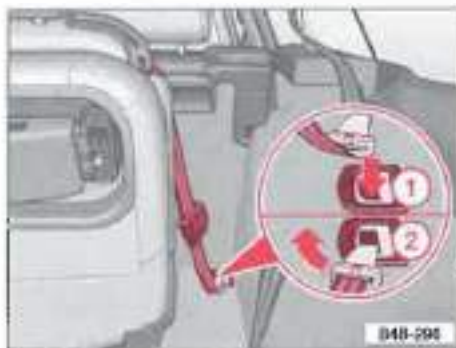
## Folding up the child seat bench

Remove the safety belts from the belt guides on the back rest and hand them from the brackets on the door trim panel.

Fold up the arm rests.

7 - Push both locking levers forward.

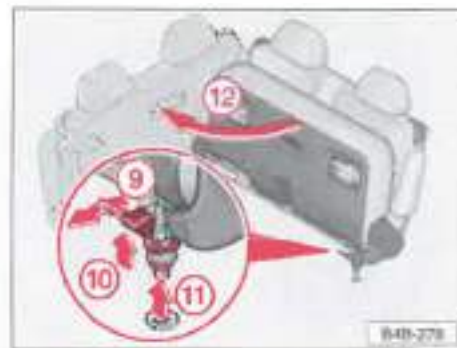
8 - Fold the seat cushion up and pivot the folding legs back into the stowed position.



Hook the tensioning belt in the tie-down, turn, and pull taut from the free end.

## Pivoting the child seat bench off to the side

If necessary, remove tray\* for beverage / food from the left side trim panel.



Once the seat cushion has been folded up and the folding legs have been swung back into their stowed position, the entire seat bench can be pivoted off to the side.

Press down on the safety belt latches and install the hinged cargo floor cover.

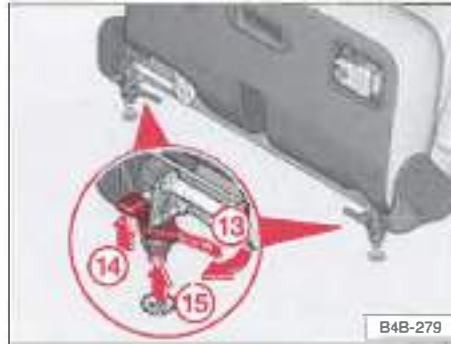
9 - Release the bench seat by rotating both levers in the direction indicated by the arrows.

10 - Push up on the right-hand locking lever.

11 - Remove the right-hand seat bench mounting pin from the mounting provided for it in the cargo floor.

12 - Lift up on the seat bench, pivot it off to the left side of the vehicle, and push it down into the mounting provided for this purpose in the cargo floor. Then rotate the two levers (9) to secure the seat bench.

Hook the tensioning belt in the left-hand tie-down near the loading edge, rotate and pull the free end until the belt is taut – refer to the center illustration on the previous page. Roll-up the sun shade on the rear window.



### Removing the seat bench

The child seat bench can be removed once the cushion is folded up and folding legs have been swung back into the stowed position.

Push down on the safety belt latches and re-install the folding cargo floor cover.

13 - Release the seat bench by turning both levers in the direction shown by the arrows.

14 - Push up on both locking levers.

15 - Remove the child seat bench from the mountings located in the cargo floor.

Cover the mountings in the cargo floor using the cover caps stowed on the rear side of the folding cargo floor cover.

### Notes

- The tensioning belt located on the right side of the backrest can be buttoned onto the backrest when not in use.
- Once the child seat bench has been completely removed from the vehicle, it can be stowed in the bag provided for this purpose.



## Ski sack

Use the ski sack to transport and protect skis and other long, light items in the passenger compartment.

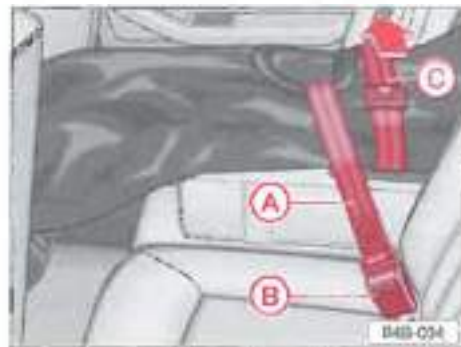
### Loading the ski sack

Load the ski sack from the luggage compartment.

- Open the luggage compartment lid and clear a space in the center.
- Press the release button for the ski sack flap in the luggage compartment (see arrow in illustration) and pull down the flap.



- Fold out center armrest in the rear seat backrest.
- Press the release button for the ski sack flap on the inside of the vehicle and open the flap.
- Pull out and unfold the ski sack.
- Load skis or similar objects through the luggage compartment into the interior of the vehicle.



### Securing the ski sack

The ski sack should be secured in place as shown.

There is a fastening belt fitted to the ski sack. The ski sack should be secured as shown in the illustration:

- Insert the tongue of the fastening belt (A) into the buckle for the center seat position (B).
- Pull the end of strap C to tighten.

### Stowing the ski sack

- Close the flap in the luggage compartment.
- Fold the ski sack carefully and stow it away.
- Close the flap inside the passenger's compartment.

#### Note

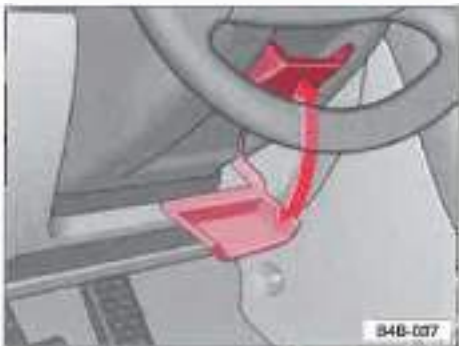
Do not fold and stow away the ski sack if it is damp (for example, snow melting from skis). Let it dry completely before you stow it away.



#### WARNING

- **The ski sack is intended only for the transportation of skis and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious personal injury never transport heavy or pointed objects in the ski sack.**
- **When braking rapidly or during an accident the load could be displaced and cause injury to occupants.**
- **Sharp edges on the load must be covered for protection. Always fasten the belt tightly around the sack and its contents (see illustration and description).**

## Adjustable steering column (tilt and telescopic)

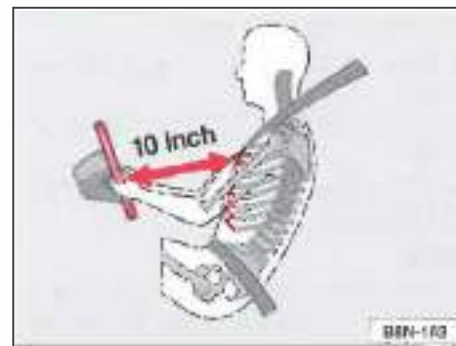


### Manually adjusted steering wheel

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be manually adjusted to suit the driver. The driver's seat should be adjusted first. Then reposition the steering wheel accordingly.

First, adjust the driver's seat, then reposition the steering wheel.

- Push down on the lever below the steering column as far as it will go. See illustration.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel must be **at least 10 inches (25 cm)** or more. (See right illustration.)
- Pull the lever back up as far as it will go and push it against the steering column to lock.



**⚠ WARNING**

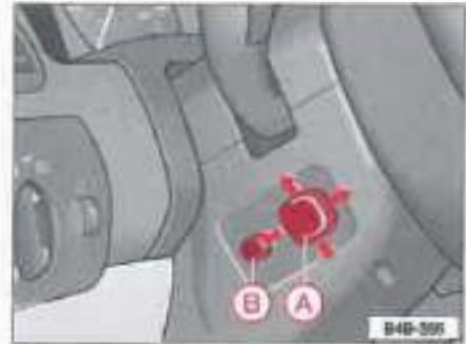
- **After adjusting the steering wheel, push the steering wheel adjustment lever back up as far as it will go. This ensures the position of the steering wheel cannot be altered unintentionally when the vehicle is moving.**
- **To help prevent loss of vehicle control and an accident, adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is not moving.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- The front seats must not be pushed too close to the steering wheel or to the instrument panel. Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in an accident.

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub.
- Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

**Electrically adjusted steering wheel\***

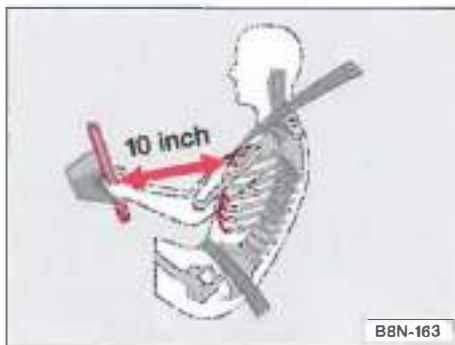
The height and reach of the steering wheel can be electrically adjusted to suit the driver.

**Adjusting height**

Push the switch **A** up or down. The height continues to change while the switch is pressed.

**Adjusting reach**

Push the switch **A** back or forward. The steering wheel continues to move while the switch is pressed.



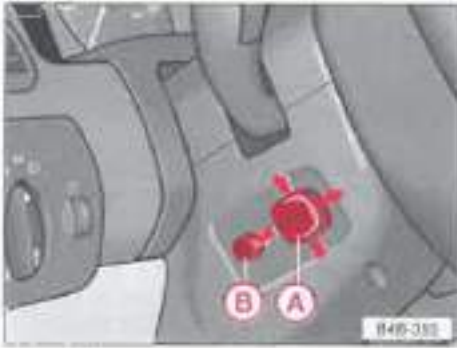
Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel must be **at least 10 inches (25 cm)** or more. (See illustration above.)

## **WARNING**

- To help prevent loss of vehicle control and an accident, adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is not moving.
- The front seats must not be adjusted too close to the steering wheel or to the instrument panel. Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel to give the airbag room to inflate and help reduce the risk of injury when the airbag deploys.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.

## **WARNING continued**

- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in an accident.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub.
- Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.



### Convenient entry function

This facilitates entering and leaving the car by moving the steering wheel.

The convenient entry function can be switched on and off by pressing button **B**.

With the convenient entry **switched on** (button **B** depressed), the steering wheel moves into the parked position (forward and up) when the ignition key is removed.

After the driver has entered the car, the steering wheel returns to the memorized position as soon as the key is turned in the ignition.

This recall function is only operative when the "STOP" button for the seat memory is depressed.

When the convenient entry is **switched off**, the steering wheel moves into the memorized position as soon as the seat position memory button is pressed.

### Memory for steering wheel position

The steering wheel position can be stored together with the seat position. See page 81.

### Pedals

**The movement of the pedals must never be obstructed by a floor mat or any other object.**

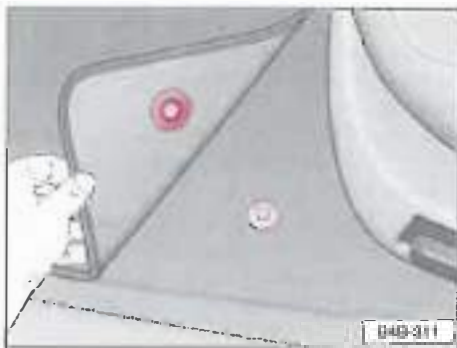
- In case one of the two brake circuits fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- You should always be able to depress the accelerator and the clutch pedals all the way down to the floor.
- All pedals must be able to return to their original position unhindered.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.



#### WARNING

**Never place any objects in the area of the pedals. In case of sudden braking or an accident, an object could interfere with pedal function. You would not be able to brake or accelerate.**



#### Floor mats, floor mat fasteners

Floor mats are factory installed in your vehicle.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in the footwells of the front and rear\* seats.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners (see illustration). This will prevent the floor mats from sliding into positions that could interfere with the safe operation of your vehicle.

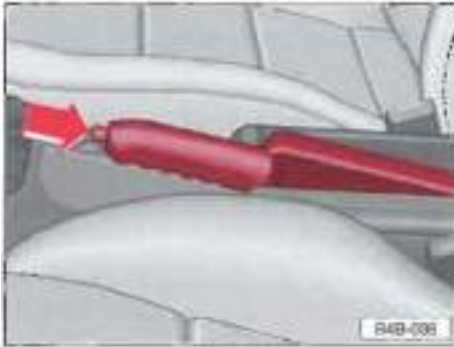
Suitable Audi floor mats can be obtained from an authorized Audi Dealer.



#### WARNING

**Do not install additional floor mats on top of existing floor mats because you will not be able to fasten them down. If you remove the floor mats for cleaning, be sure to fasten them again securely when reinstalling.**

## Parking brake lever



The parking brake lever is located between the front seats.

- To set the parking brake, pull the lever up until strong resistance is felt. The parking brake must be pulled up all the way so that the vehicle cannot be moved. When the ignition is on, the brake warning light will light up.

- Depress brake pedal and hold while releasing parking brake. To release the parking brake, pull the lever slightly up, depress the release button (arrow), and then push the lever all the way down.

When the parking brake is fully released, the brake warning light will go out.

### WARNING

- **Always release the parking brake fully. A partially engaged brake will overheat the rear brakes, reduce their effectiveness, and cause excessive wear. This could lead to brake failure and an accident.**

- **Always set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.**

- **Move the selector lever to "P".**

### WARNING continued

- **When parking on hills, also turn the wheels so that the front wheels will first run into the curb if the car starts to roll.**

- parking headed downhill, always turn the front wheels toward the curb.

- parking headed uphill, always turn the front wheels away from the curb.

- **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. A child could release the parking brake and allow the car to move causing an accident and personal injury.**



### 5-speed automatic transmission (Tiptronic®)\*



Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled five-speed automatic transmission, upshifting and downshifting is automatic. You can also manually select a shift program (Tiptronic®).

#### Ignition key safety interlock

After switching off the ignition, you can remove the ignition key only when the selector lever is in the **P (Park)** position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the **P (Park)** position.

#### Shift programs

The transmission is "self adapting" and will **automatically** select the most appropriate shift program suited to the driving conditions and driving style.

The transmission will select one of the **economy** programs when you drive at a steady speed or at gradually changing speeds without heavy acceleration. This gives best fuel efficiency, with early upshifting and delayed downshifting.

The transmission will automatically select the **sporty** shift programs when you drive at higher speeds, or with heavy acceleration and frequently changing speeds. Upshifts are then delayed to make full use of engine power, and downshifting takes place at higher engine speeds than in the economy programs.

The selection of the most suitable shift program is a continuous automatic process. Regardless of this, the driver can also make the transmission switch to a **sporty** program by pressing down the gas pedal **quickly**.

This causes the transmission to shift down into a lower gear and makes quick acceleration possible (for example to pass another vehicle). You do not need to depress the gas pedal into the kick-down range. After the transmission has upshifted again, the original program is selected according to your driving style.

An additional shift program allows the automatic transmission to select the proper gear for uphill and downhill driving.

This prevents the transmission from shifting up and down unnecessarily on hills. The transmission will also shift down to a lower gear when the driver presses the brake pedal while driving downhill. This makes use of the braking effect of the engine without the need to shift down manually.

With this function the transmission will, however, only shift down as far as 2nd gear.



### Tiptronic®

By using the "Tiptronic®," you can manually select gears. Here is how:

in the "D" position, push the lever to the right. You can do this while the vehicle is moving or when the vehicle is at a standstill. The display on the instrument cluster will show "5", "4", "3", "2" and "1" as soon as the selector lever is pushed to the right. The gear you select will also be highlighted. See illustration.



To upshift, push the selector lever forward to the "+" plus position. To downshift, push the lever to the "-" minus position.

When the vehicle is accelerated in gears 1, 2, 3 and 4, the transmission will automatically shift to the next higher gear just before the maximum speed is reached.

When accelerating, if you apply a "light" throttle, the Tiptronic® will shift automatically from 1st to 2nd gear to save fuel. However, if you use a "heavy" throttle, the transmission will stay in 1st gear until near maximum rpm's are reached, or until the driver shifts into 2nd gear.

When you shift into a higher gear too early, the transmission will not upshift until a pre-determined engine rpm has been reached.

When you shift into the next lower gear, the engine will downshift only when there is no possibility of overfeeding.

When the kickdown comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear depending on vehicle and engine speeds.

If you take your foot off the accelerator pedal to make use of the braking effectiveness of the transmission **when driving down a steep incline**, the Tiptronic® will downshift from the selected gear into the next lower gear until it reaches 1st gear based on road speed and engine rpm's. The automatic downshifting is interrupted as soon as you apply throttle again.



### Steering wheel with Tiptronic®

The buttons on the steering wheel allow the driver to shift gears manually.

The selector buttons on the steering wheel are activated when the selector lever on the center console is located in the manual position (Tiptronic position).

Of course, it is also possible to operate the "Tiptronic" using the selector lever on the center console.

When "Tiptronic" is activated, the buttons on the steering wheel are illuminated.

Tapping the upper part (+) of one of the two selector buttons will cause the vehicle to shift into a high gear. Tapping the lower part (-) will cause the vehicle to shift down to a lower gear.

### Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

Your Audi is equipped with an Automatic Shift Lock (ASL). The ASL is an electro-mechanical device that locks the selector lever in the **P (Park)** and **N (Neutral)** positions when the ignition is on.

You must depress the brake pedal before the selector lever can be moved out of either position. This prevents the selector lever from being moved unintentionally into a driving position resulting in unwanted vehicle movement.

In selector lever positions **“P” (Park)** and **“N” (Neutral)**, the instruction **“WHEN STATIONARY APPLY FOOTBRAKE WHILE SELECTING GEAR”** appears in the instrument cluster as a reminder for the driver. Also, the symbol in the shift console will light up.

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the **“N” (Neutral)** position (for example, going from **“R”** to **“D”**). The locking element only locks the selector lever if it is left in the **“N” (Neutral)** position for more than about one second without the brake pedal being depressed.

In the **N (Neutral)** position, the selector lever will not lock when the vehicle is driving faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).



### Display

When the ignition is switched on, the position of the selector lever is shown in the display in the instrument cluster. The illustration shows selector position **D** engaged.

The engaged selector lever position will appear bright against a dark background while the other positions appear just the opposite.

If all the positions appear dark against a bright background at the same time, or when no positions are indicated then there is a malfunction in the transmission – see under **“Fail-safe mode”** on page 111.

## Selector lever positions

### P – Park

Engage **P (Park)** only when the vehicle is stationary. When parking your vehicle, apply the parking brake first, and then move the selector lever completely to position **P**. **To do this depress the button in the handle of the selector lever and push it through R to P.** The transmission is then mechanically locked.

To move the selector lever out of the **P (Park)** position you must first insert the ignition key into the ignition lock and turn.

**Before you move the selector lever from the P (Park) position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.**

Shift out of the **P (Park)** position before releasing the parking brake.

When the vehicle is parked on a steep hill, shifting out of **P (Park)** may be a little harder. This is due to the vehicle's weight exerted on the transmission.

### **R – Reverse**

Reverse should be selected only when the vehicle has come to a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

**Before you move the selector lever to the reverse position you have to depress the push button in the handle of the selector lever.**

If the ignition is switched on, the backup lights come on when the selector lever is moved into the **R (Reverse)** position

### **N – Neutral**

Shift to this position for standing with brakes applied.

**Before you move the selector lever from N (Neutral) to R position you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.**

**When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph / 5 km/h, you can only move the lever out of N (Neutral) by applying the foot-brake before and while moving the selector lever.**

**Do not use N (Neutral) for coasting downhill. Coasting downhill with the transmission in Neutral and while the engine is not running will result in damage to the automatic transmission and can also damage the catalytic converter.**

### **D – Normal driving position**

Position **D** is for normal city and highway driving. It ranges from zero to top speed and all five gears shift automatically, depending on engine load, driving speed and automatically selected shift programs.

**Before you move the selector lever to position 4 you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.**

Sometimes it may be better to temporarily engage one of the following selector positions.

### **4 – Position for hilly stretches**

This selector lever position is recommended in situations, for example when driving on hilly stretches, where the transmission shifts frequently between fourth and fifth gears in position **D**. Also, in position **4** the engine's braking effect is greater than in **D**.

In position **4**, the first, second, third and fourth gears will engage automatically.

### 3 – Position for mountainous regions

Position **3** should be used for mountain driving with long uphill and downhill grades. Use it also when you want to use the braking effect of the engine, which is more effective than in **4**. In **3**, only the first, second and third gears will engage automatically.

**Before you move the selector lever to position 2 you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.**

### 2 – Position for steep hills

This position is to be used for extremely steep uphill and downhill gradients or slow driving. It also provides the most engine braking effect. In **2** the transmission will start in the first gear and only upshift to the second gear.

### Note

When manually downshifting, the selector lever will move into the lower gear position. However, the automatic transmission itself will not downshift until there is no possibility of overrevving the engine.

### Kick-down

The kick-down gives maximum acceleration when the accelerator pedal is pressed down past the full throttle position. Depending on vehicle speed and engine speed, the upshift is either delayed or the transmission shifts down into a lower gear.



### WARNING

**Avoid using the kick-down on slippery roads. Rapid acceleration may cause skidding and loss of control.**

### Driving the automatic transmission

#### Starting the engine

The selector lever must be in **N (Neutral)** or **P (Park)**. If one of the driving positions is engaged a safety switch will prevent the engine from being started.

## Selecting a driving position

### WARNING

- Power is transmitted to the wheels as soon as a driving position is engaged. Therefore, when the selector lever is in a driving position, the vehicle may creep even at idle speed. Do not release the parking brake or foot brake until you are ready to move.
- If you must check under the hood with the engine running, never have any driving position engaged. Make sure the selector lever is securely locked into the P (Park) position with the parking brake firmly set. Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.
- Do not accelerate while selecting a driving position. At this time the engine must run at idle speed so that no undue stress will be placed on the automatic clutches in the transmission.

### WARNING continued

- If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N (Neutral) while you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait to idle speed before selecting a driving position.
- Never shift into R (Reverse) or P (Park) when the vehicle is in moving. You will damage the transmission.

### Starting off

Select a gear. **Wait for the transmission to engage the gear** (the vehicle may move slightly). Then press the gas pedal.

### Maneuvering

When alternating between forward (D) and reverse (R) – for instance, while maneuvering the vehicle into a tight parking space – shift only when the vehicle has come to a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

## Stopping

- When stopping briefly, at a traffic light for example, it is not necessary to move the selector lever to N (Neutral). Simply apply the foot brake.
- The driving positions must never be used for holding the vehicle on a hill. Always use the foot brake when stopped on inclines.

### WARNING

**It is best never to get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running. However, if you must get out of the vehicle, do this: Move the selector lever securely into the P (Park) position and apply the parking brake firmly. If you are not securely in P (Park), your vehicle could move, possibly causing a serious accident.**

## Parking

On flat terrain, it is enough to simply set the selector lever to position **P (Park)**. On an incline, however, first depress the brake pedal, engage the parking brake and then move the selector lever completely to position **P**. If you do this, the locking mechanism will not be overloaded and it will be easier to release the parking brake.



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 103.**

## Emergency starting

Your Audi with automatic transmission **cannot be started by pushing or towing**. If the engine does not start because of a discharged battery, the vehicle can be started with jumper cables. Refer to "Emergency starting with jumper cables." Should the engine fail to start, consult your nearest Audi Dealer.

## Towing

To tow the vehicle, see instructions "Emergency towing" on page 281.

## Auxiliary modes

You can recognize a failure in the electronic system if the selector lever position display letters appear bright against a dark background. You can still drive because the transmission will continue to work in an auxiliary mode. Take your vehicle to your nearest Audi Dealer as soon as possible.

### Note

- **The electronic lock that protects the reverse gear while driving is inoperative when the transmission is in an auxiliary mode. Shifting into R (Reverse) while driving will cause serious damage to the vehicle.**
- The Tiptronic® is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode.



## Acoustic park assist\*

The acoustic parking warning system will help make parking and maneuvering in tight places easier for you. But since there are technical limitations to what it can do, **always exercise the utmost care and attention when parking and when maneuvering your vehicle in tight places.**

When you are backing up in parking maneuvers, a park assist warning system using ultrasonic sensors helps you determine the distance between your rear bumper, where the sensors are located, and obstacles behind the vehicle.

The parking assist system is activated **as soon as you put the vehicle in Reverse**. A brief tone confirms that the system is activated.

Distance warning in reverse begins at a distance of about 5.2 ft. (1.60 m) from the obstacle. As the distance becomes smaller, the time interval between the audible tones grows shorter.

The danger zone begins at a distance of about 1 ft. (0.30 m). Do not back up any further once you have reached the danger zone. The danger zone is signaled by a continuous tone.

### **WARNING**

● **The park assist system is not a substitute for the driver's own caution and alertness. Ultimate responsibility always lies with the driver during parking and similar maneuvers.**

● **Sensors have dead spaces in which objects cannot be detected. Be especially alert for small children and animals, since they are not always detected by the sensors.**

● **Objects, such as trailer hitches, thin painted rods, or fences, may not always be detected by the system, but they can damage your vehicle.**

### **Note**

- If a warning tone is audible for about 5 seconds when you turn on the ignition, a fault is present in the system. Have the problem corrected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of ice for the park assist system to function properly.

## Ignition switch



Your Audi has an ignition switch with an anti-theft steering column lock.

### Switch positions

- 1 - Ignition off/engine off—steering wheel can be locked.

### Note

Whenever you leave the vehicle unattended, pull out the key, turn the steering wheel to the left or right until it locks and make sure that the vehicle is closed and locked.

### WARNING

**Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of vehicle controls can cause serious personal injuries.**

### Ignition key safety interlock

You can remove the ignition key only when the selector lever is in the **P (Park)** position. When the key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in “**P**.”

- 2 - Ignition on / steering unlocked<sup>1)</sup>.  
If it is difficult to turn the key from position **1** to **2**, move the steering wheel until the key turns freely.
- 3 - Starter engages. Key returns to position **2** as soon as it is released. For “Starting procedures”, see following page.

<sup>1)</sup> If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, then you must hold the key in position **2** for approximately 5 seconds, before the engine will start.

In position **3**, the power supply to the headlights, windshield wipers, blower motor and rear window defogger is temporarily interrupted to conserve battery power.

Before the starter can be operated again the key must be turned back to position **1**.

The non-repeat lock in the ignition switch prevents the starter from being operated when the engine is running as this could damage the starter.

In positions **2** and **3** several warning / indicator lights will come on. Refer to “Warning / indicator lights” for details.

### Chime

If you leave the key in the ignition / steering lock, a chime will sound when the driver’s door is opened. This is your reminder to remove the key and lock the doors.


### Buzzer

If the lights are not switched off after the key has been removed from the steering lock, a buzzer sounds as soon as the driver’s door is opened.

## Starting procedures

### WARNING

- Always fasten safety belts before driving.
- Never start or let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can be fatal if inhaled.
- Never leave the engine idling unattended. An unattended vehicle with a running engine poses a danger of personal injury or theft.

 *To avoid unnecessary engine wear and to reduce exhaust emissions, do not let your vehicle stand and warm up. Be ready to drive off immediately after starting your vehicle. Maintain moderate speed until the engine is completely warm. Remember, the engine performs best at operating temperature.*

### Manual transmission

Your Audi with manual transmission is equipped with an "interlock-feature".

**Start the engine with the gearshift lever in Neutral and the clutch pedal fully depressed. Remember, you must depress and hold the clutch pedal all the way down, otherwise the engine will not start.**

### Automatic transmission

Engine will start with selector lever in **N (Neutral)** or **P (Park)** only.

### Starting engine

- **Do not depress** the gas pedal while starting. This applies at any outside temperature.
- As soon as the engine starts, release the ignition key.
- If the engine does not start the first time or stalls, turn the ignition off and restart.
- Operate the starter for no more than 10 seconds.
- Allow about 30 seconds between each starting attempt.
- When starting a very hot engine, it may be necessary to slightly depress the gas pedal after starting the engine.

## Stopping engine

### Note

- Your Audi with automatic transmission cannot be started with pushing or towing.
- If the battery is discharged, try jump starting the engine using the battery from another vehicle - see page 278.

**Do not stop the engine immediately after hard or extended driving. Keep engine running for about two minutes to prevent excessive heat build-up.**

### **WARNING**

- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Hot components can burn skin on contact.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan can switch on suddenly and injure you.
- Always heed all **WARNINGS** on page 232.

### Note

**The ignition should not be switched off as long the vehicle is still rolling with a gear engaged, otherwise fuel could get into the catalytic converter and cause damage.**

## Instrument cluster



Pos.	see page
1 - Engine oil temperature gauge . . .	117
2 - Tachometer . . . . .	117
with digital clock and date display	117
3 - Warning / indicator lights . . . . .	122
4 - Engine coolant temperature gauge	118
5 - Fuel gauge . . . . .	119

Pos.	see page
6 - Speedometer . . . . .	119
with odometer, trip odometer display . . . . .	120
7 - Voltmeter . . . . .	120
8 - Set / check knob for	
Setting the clock . . . . .	118
Auto-check system . . . . .	140
Clock and Odometer lighting . . . .	120
Service indicator . . . . .	121

Pos.	see page
9 - Driver information system	
Auto-Check System display . . . . .	138
Outside air temperature display . .	137
Trip computer display . . . . .	146
Selector lever position display . .	107
Radio frequency display . . . . .	138
Service interval display . . . . .	121
10 - Reset knob for	
Trip odometer . . . . .	120
Service indicator . . . . .	121

The illustration on previous page shows the arrangement of the instrument cluster in a U.S. vehicle.

## 1 – Engine oil temperature gauge °F (C)

Engine oil temperature ranges from 150 °F (60 °C) to 350 °F (180 °C). With the needle around 150 °F (60 °C), do not accelerate under full load.

If the needle moves into the upper zone in exceptional cases, reduce your speed. The needle should then return to the normal zone.

If the needle stays in upper zone, stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is correct and the oil pressure warning light does not flash when the engine is started, you can drive to the next authorized Audi Dealer but do not run engine at high speeds.

## 2 – Tachometer with clock

### Tachometer

The red area at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine rpm (revolutions per minute) for all gears after the break-in period. Before reaching this area, the next higher gear or selector lever position "D" should be selected or the foot eased off the accelerator pedal.

 **Upshifting early saves fuel and reduces engine noise.**

Shift to the next lower gear when engine rpm drops below 1,500 rpm.



### Digital clock with date display

The clock and date are located in the tachometer dial. Adjusting the clock / date: see next page.

When the ignition is off the clock / date display can be illuminated by pressing the set-button. See illustration above.

## Setting the time / date

- Pull the knob **to set the hour**. The hour display will flash. Set the desired hour display by turning the knob clockwise or counterclockwise.

- **To set the minutes**, pull the knob out as often as needed to make the minutes display flash. You can then set the minutes display by turning the knob clockwise or counterclockwise.

- **To set the date**, pull the knob out as often as needed to make the day, month or year display flash. You can then set the day, month or year display by turning the knob clockwise or counterclockwise.

Your clock will be set once the display stops flashing after you operate the setting knob.

## Changing time zones

If you enter a new time zone, simply change the hour display to the correct time – see “Setting the time / date”.

## Turning the date display on and off

- Pull out the knob as often as needed to make the date display flash.

- Turn the knob counterclockwise to deactivate the display, or clockwise to activate it. The setting will be accepted as soon as the display stop flashing after you operate the setting knob.

## 3 – Warning and indicator lights

See page 122.

## 4 – Engine coolant temperature gauge

The needle in the coolant temperature gauge will indicate the temperature of the coolant when the ignition is switched on.

### Engine cold

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy throttle when the needle is still at the left of the dial.

### Normal temperature

During normal running, the needle will remain somewhere in the middle of the dial. If the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures, the needle may also go further to the right, **but this is no cause for concern as long as the coolant temperature warning light does not flash.**

### Warning light

If the coolant warning light in the Auto-Check System (see page 141) flashes when driving, the engine may be overheated because of low coolant level.

### Note

**Do not install accessories (additional lights or insect screens, for example) on top of the front bumper. They may restrict engine cooling and cause engine damage.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 142 and 232.**

### 5 – Fuel gauge



The fuel gauge works when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank capacity is approximately 18.5 gallons (70 liters).

When the needle reaches the red area, there is a reserve of about 2.4 U.S. gallons (9 liters) of fuel left in the tank. **Time to re-fuel.**

The fuel pump symbol in the instrument cluster lights up as an additional reminder to refuel.

Never run the tank completely dry. See also page 222.

### 6 – Speedometer / odometer

#### Speedometer

Refer to “Break-In Period” before driving off see page 193.

The speedometer indicates the speed.

On U.S. models, the outer row of numbers (large numbers) indicates the vehicle speed in miles per hour (mph). The inner row (small numbers) indicates the vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km / h).

The arrangement of the instruments in the cluster may vary depending on engine version.





## Odometer

The odometer indicates the distance driven.

USA models: Miles  
 Canada models: Kilometres

On the trip odometer, the last digit indicates  $\frac{1}{10}$  of a mile or 100 meters.

## Reset knob for trip odometer

To record a distance, reset the trip odometer by pressing the knob until the display returns to zero – see illustration.

When the ignition is off, the display can be illuminated by pressing the test knob for the Auto-Check System. See page 116, position 8. The display switches off automatically after about 15 seconds.

Also, the display will remain illuminated for about 30 seconds after you open the driver's door.

## Defect message

If there is a defect in the instrument cluster, "DEF" will be displayed continuously in the trip odometer display area. Have this problem corrected as soon as possible by an authorized Audi Dealer.

## 7 – Voltmeter

The voltmeter indicates the voltage for the vehicle's total electrical system, which should normally be between 12 and 14 volts. If the display drops below 12 volts when the engine is running, have the power supply (battery and alternator) checked by an authorized Audi Dealer. See also pages 127 and 143.

The voltage may fall below 8 volts while the engine is being started.

## 8 – Set / Check knob

Setting the clock . . . . .	118
Auto-check system . . . . .	140
Odometer lighting . . . . .	120
Service indicator . . . . .	121

## 9 – Driver information system

Auto-Check System display . . . . .	138
Outside air temperature display . . . . .	137
Trip computer display . . . . .	146
Selector lever position display . . . . .	107
Radio frequency display . . . . .	138
Service interval display . . . . .	121

## 10 –Reset knob

Reset knob for trip odometer . . . . .	120
Service indicator . . . . .	121

## Service Interval Display



When your vehicle requires a Service, this will be shown in the instrument cluster display (see illustration).

### Display remaining distance

With the ignition on, briefly push button (1) to display the distance remaining (miles / kilometres) until the next Service is due. You can perform a function test with the engine in idle or when the vehicle has reached a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h).

If there is a priority 1 malfunction (red symbol), you will not be able to display the distance remaining.

If service is needed soon, "**SERVICE IN 1,200 MLS**" (2,000 KM) will appear, or if service is now due, "**SERVICE!**" will appear. The display will switch back to the normal display after about 5 seconds.

### Resetting the interval display

The Service Department at your authorized Audi Dealer will reset the display after performing the required service.

If the service is not performed by your authorized Audi Dealer, the display must be reset as follows:

- Turn off the ignition.
- Then, turn on the ignition again while holding the button (2) down. "**SERVICE!**" will appear in the display.
- Press the button (1) until the "**SERVICE!**" text is cleared. This display should now show the next service event.

### Notes

- Do not reset the display between service intervals, otherwise this will result in an incorrect display.
- The service display information will remain intact even if the battery is disconnected.

### Warning / Indicator lights

Your vehicle is equipped with several important warning and indicator lights to help you monitor the continued reliable operation of your vehicle. Furthermore, certain functions and vehicle components are consistently monitored by the Auto-Check System (see page 138). Please be sure to get to know these lights so if one should come on you know what to do.



#### WARNING

- **Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.**
- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher – see page 152.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood. – see page 232.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232, chapter “Engine compartment”.**



### Electronic power control\*

#### EPC

The indicator light will come on when the ignition is switched on. It should go out after the engine starts.

If the engine management system experience trouble while you are on the road, the indicator light will come on to alert you. The electronic engine power control system will automatically switch to the failure-mode program. You will experience some reduction in engine power. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi Dealer as soon as possible.

### Side marker lights / head lights



The light comes on when the side marker lights or head lights are switched on with the ignition on.

### Self-leveling suspension



The warning light will come on when you switch on the ignition, and will then go out after a few seconds just as a test to make sure the light is working properly.

If the warning light blinks after the function test, this means that the vehicle's ride height has dropped down. It's normal for this happen, for example, after the vehicle has been parked for some time.

The warning light will go off after the self-leveling suspension has re-adjusted the vehicle ride height. After this has taken place, the vehicle will now be at its original ground clearance regardless of cargo load.

Do not drive off until the warning light stops blinking, otherwise you could damage low-mounted parts on the rear suspension if you drive over uneven road surfaces.

If the warning light is flashing, it can also mean that the vehicle is riding “too high” (above the highest level). Once again, do not drive off until the warning light stops flashing.

If the warning light stays on continuously, there is a problem with the ride height adjustment system. The light will also come on continuously if the vehicle is on an extreme incline.

Trouble in the ESP may also cause the warning light to remain on continuously.

A system failure can cause the vehicle to have too little or too much ground clearance. Drive very carefully and slowly to your nearest authorized Audi dealer and have the fault corrected.

See page 153 for additional information.

### Electronic Stability Program (ESP)



The indicator light lights up when the ignition is turned on, and it must go out after about 2 seconds.

When the ESP system is in control mode, this indicator light will flash while the vehicle is being operated.

**When you start the engine**, the ESP may shut off for safety reasons. The indicator light also turns on to indicate this status.

If this should happen, you can reactivate the ESP by turning the ignition off and then on again. This indicator light will go out, indicating that the system is once again operating properly.

If the system is off or is malfunctioning, the indicator light will remain on.

Since the ESP system works together with the ABS system, the ESP indicator light will also come on if the ABS stops operating.

### Electronic immobilizer



When you turn on the ignition, the vehicle key data are automatically scanned. The indicator light will come on briefly, indicating that the data verification procedure has been acknowledged.

If a non-coded vehicle key was used (for example a duplicate key), the control light goes to a continuous flashing mode. If this happens, the vehicle cannot be started. See also page 57.

## Turn signals and emergency flasher



Refer to "Turn signal / headlight dimmer switch lever and emergency flasher" on pages 152 and 156 for details.

## High beam



The indicator light lights up when the high beams are switched on or when the headlight flasher is used.

See "Turn signal / headlight dimmer switch lever" on page 156 for details.

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



The Malfunction Indicator Lamp is part of the On Board Diagnostic system (OBD).

The lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on and will go out after the engine is started and the idle has stabilized. This is to assure you that the Malfunction Indicator Lamp is working properly.

For more details, see page 128.

## Airbag System

**AIR  
BAG**

The indicator light for the **airbag** and **belt tensioner system** must come on when the ignition is switched on, and go out after a few seconds. If the light does not go out, or if it comes on while you are driving, this indicates a fault in the airbag / belt tensioner system.

If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is switched on, this also indicates a system malfunction. If any of these conditions occur, have the air bag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi Dealer.

For more details, see page 25.

## Anti-lock Brake System

**USA models:**

**ABS**

**Canada models:**



This warning light monitors the **ABS** and **EDL (Electronic Differential Lock)** systems.

The light will come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light will go out after an automatic check sequence.

For additional information on the ABS system, see page 202.

### **WARNING**

**If the ABS warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You won't have the protection ABS provides. Contact your Audi Dealer as soon as possible.**

**If there is an ABS problem:**

o **The ABS warning light to come on. The vehicle can still be braked, however, the ABS will not work. See your authorized Audi Dealer as soon as possible.**

o **The ABS warning light and the brake warning light come on together. The ABS will not work and you will notice a change in braking characteristics and performance.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If both warning lights (ABS and BRAKE warning light) come on at the same time, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.**

If the ABS fails, the ESP warning light will come on. See page and pages 202 – 205.

**Electronic differential lock (EDL)**

The electronic differential lock works in conjunction with the ABS system. A fault in the ABS causes therefore a malfunction of the electronic differential lock.

For more details on how the EDL works, go to page 204.

**Brake**

**USA models:**

**Canada models:**

**BRAKE**



The light comes on while the engine is cranking. It goes out after the engine has been started and the parking brake is fully released. This is your assurance that the brake warning light is functioning properly.



**If the brake warning light does not light up when the engine is cranking or the parking brake is applied, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system. In this case, contact your Audi Dealer.**

When the light comes on, an audible warning signal is also given.



**WARNING**

**o If both warning lights (ABS and BRAKE warning light) come on at the same time, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.**


**WARNING** continued

- **If the brake warning light does not go out with the engine running and the parking brake released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low.**
- **If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Audi Dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected.**
- **Please be very careful and be sure to remember that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Consequently, you must allow for increased braking distances. Trying to brake as quickly as usual could lead to an accident.**

For details see "Brakes" on page 201.

**Generator**

This light comes on when the ignition is turned on and goes out after the engine is started. If the light does not go out after starting and revving up the engine momentarily or lights up while driving, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system, or the V-belt driving the generator may be broken.

 **If the warning light comes on while driving, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine. Inspect the belts.**

If the V-belt is not torn, you can still continue driving to the nearest Audi Dealer. However, since the battery is no longer being charged, switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment.

If the V-belt is torn, the power steering and the radiator fan will also not work.

**Obtain expert assistance.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232, chapter "Engine compartment".**

**Safety belts**

Your vehicle has a warning light to remind you to wear your safety belt and to make sure that others do too.

After switching on the ignition, the warning light in the instrument cluster will come on for about 6 seconds along with a warning tone. As soon as you fasten your safety belt, the warning tone will stop.

The warning light, however, will be on for the entire 6 seconds.

**Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.**

**Please be sure to read the chapter "Safety belts" page 14.**



### On Board Diagnostic system

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) – see page 125 – is part of the On Board Diagnostic system (OBD).

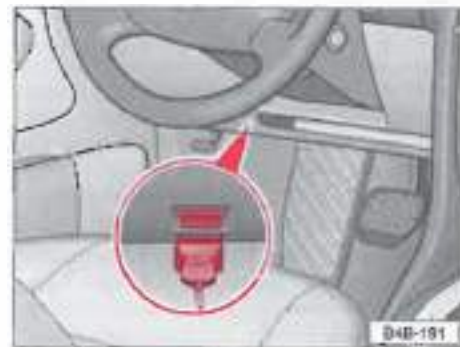
The lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on and will go out after the engine is started and the idle has stabilized. This is to assure you that the Malfunction Indicator Lamp is working properly.

If the lamp does not go out after the engine is started, or if it comes on while you're driving, there is a malfunction in the engine system. If the lamp starts blinking, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** and have the cause corrected right away by an authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the lamp comes on, the Electronic speed limiter can also be out of operation. See next page.

The On Board Diagnostics in your vehicle monitors the various components of your emission control system. Each controlled component in your engine system has been coded. In case of a malfunction the respective component in question will be identified and the fault stored in the form of a code in the control module's memory.



#### On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

The stored data can only be displayed with special testing equipment (generic scan tool for OBD) to assure an accurate diagnosis.

To connect the special testing equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC) located to the right of the release lever for the engine hood – see illustration.

Your authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop can interpret the code and make the necessary correction.

### Electronic speed limiter

Your Audi may be factory equipped with tires which are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control should the vehicle be operated at excessive speeds, your Audi also has an electronic speed limiter which prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. See page 257.

If the vehicle approaches the tire speed rating, the engine control unit will shut off the fuel injectors and you will notice an instant loss of engine power and drop in road speed. The engine performance will return to normal as soon as the speed has dropped below approximately 125 mph (200 km/h).

**If the vehicle road speed signal to the engine control unit should fail, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp will come on.**

If this occurs, see your authorized Audi Dealer and have the cause located and corrected.



### WARNING

**Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.**

## Driver information system



### Display

The driver information system consists of the following components:

Service interval display	121
Menus	131
Rear lid / door open indicator	137
Outside air temperature	137
Radio frequency display	138
Auto-Check System	138
Speed warning	144
Trip computer	146



Navigation data\* – see illustration.

Operation of the Audi Navigation System is described in a separate manual.

Selector lever position (Automatic transmission) . . . . . 107

When the selector lever of the automatic transmission is in "P" or "N" position the display will remind you to apply the foot-brake while the vehicle is stationary.



Keep pressing the "reset" button (see arrow in illustration) to switch between the following functions:

- Outside temperature / trip computer / Auto Check Control
- Display Navigation\*
- Display off

Any malfunctions occurring will still be shown, even when the display is switched off.

The Navigation System cannot be operated unless the display is turned on.

## Menu display

Some functions on your vehicle can be set, activated and controlled by means of menus when the ignition is on. You can also use these menus to select the information that the DIS will display for your (for example: the trip computer).

The entire DIS concept provides a convenient way for you to stay informed of the current operating status of your vehicle and to know when to perform preventative maintenance.

The following pages describe how to obtain information, change menu-driven settings and call up additional data.

The "Example of operation" on page 135 illustrates how to use the menus in a typical setting operation. This model procedure can also be adapted for other types of settings.



The **controls** for making menu selections and entries are located in the center console as illustrated.



### Selecting a menu

Press the **Menu button** to go to the menu function. (For safety reasons, this is only possible when the **vehicle is standing still**.)

From the starting menu, additional **submenus** will appear depending on your selections and entries. These submenus will allow you to call up information, or make additional settings.



### Starting menu

The starting menu tells you which types of displays can be shown in the DIS display. The possible **display types** are:

- **Menu off**
- **Check**
- **Set**
- **Help**



### Selecting menus and entering selections

Use the **rotary push button** to choose and enter selections.

- **Rotate button = Select/Set**

Rotate the button (see illustration curved arrow) to move the **selection arrow** in the menus or to change settings.

- **Press button = Enter/Confirm**

Press the rotary push button (see illustration, arrow) to enter your selection or to set the selected values in the system.

## Display types

The following functions are assigned to the display types in the starting menu:

### Menu off

- Trip computer
- Auto Check System / radio data
- Outside temperature
- Speed warning
- Door and rear lid warning
- Message display / display of selector lever's positions (Automatic transmission)
- Navigation display\*

The Navigation System\* can be operated using the switches in the center console – see separate operator manual for the Navigation System\*.

### Check

- *Service* – see page 121.

### Set

- *Computer* – see page 146.
- *Clock* – see page 117 and 135.
- *Radio info.* – see page 138.
- *Speed warn.* – see page 144.

### Help

The help function will assist you in selecting the correct entry.



## Getting help

You can access the help menu from the starting menu by moving the selection arrow to **Help** and then pushing the button (enter).

Key:

- ▶ – Selector arrow
- ✓ – Selected
- – Not selected
- ▼ – Next page
- ▲ – Previous page

To leave the help menu, move the select arrow to **Back** and press the button to enter.



## Entering settings

If you want to enter a setting, for example, rotate the button until the selection arrow points to **Set**. Then enter your selection in the system by briefly pressing the rotary push button.

The settings submenu will now appear in the display.



Make your selection and again press the rotary push button. The set function will now be displayed. Once again, select and enter values by rotating or pressing the rotary push button.



## Making selections

In some setting operations, a selection is made rather than entering values. To do this, you need to either select an **empty box** (☐) or a **check mark** (✓). See illustration.

To enter a selection, rotate the button until the selection arrow appears in front of the check mark or empty box, and then press the button. The symbol will now change from a check mark to an empty box or vice versa.



### Go back to a higher menu level

After obtaining information or making a setting, if you wish to return to the next higher menu level, rotate the button to move the selection arrow to **Back** and then press the button.



### Example of operation

Suppose you wish to **set the date**:

- Press the MENU button in the center console – the starting menu will appear.
- Turn the rotary button to move the selection arrow to **Set**. See illustration.
- Press the rotary button to display the **Set** submenu.



- Rotate the button to place the arrow on **Clock**.
- Now press the rotary button again → the **Clock** setting menu will now appear in the display. See next illustration.





- Turn the rotary button to place the selection arrow in front of **Date**.

If an empty box appears in front of **Date**, press the rotary button. Now a check mark will appear (see illustration) → the most recently set date will appear in the setting menu.

- Turn the selection button to put the arrow next to the date display and press the button → the day will begin to flash.



Now set the date as follows:

- Rotate the button clockwise or counter-clockwise until the correct number for the day appears. Enter this number by pressing the button – the setting mode will then skip to the month → the number of the month will begin to flash.
- Now select the month as described above and enter by pressing the button → the number of the year will begin to flash.
- Now the final step is to select the year and to confirm your selection.



to leave the setting menu, place the arrow **Back** and press the rotary button → the setting menu will move back to the next higher level.

### Note

If you wish, you can use the **Clock** menu to set the time in a similar manner.

## Rear lid / door open indicator



With the ignition switched on a symbol in the digital display will come on when either a door or the rear lid are opened.

For example, the above illustration shows that the front passenger's door, the rear left door and the rear lid are not closed. The symbol blinks with the rear lid is open.

As soon as all the doors and rear lid are properly closed, the symbol will go out.

## Outside air temperature



The outside temperature is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the selector lever of the automatic transmission is in a driving position.

At temperatures between 41 °F (+5 °C) and 23 °F (-5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in temperature display.

### WARNING

**The snowflake symbol is to warn you that there may be ice on the road and that you should pay special attention.**

**Ice can form or remain on bridges and roads even at temperatures above freezing.**

When the vehicle is stationary, or when you are driving at very low driving speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of heat from the engine.

The display will automatically switch from Celsius to Fahrenheit (and vice versa) whenever you change the temperature display on the climate control panel. See page 163.

## Radio frequency display

If the radio is switched on and no second priority faults are present, the OK symbol will go out and the display will show the frequency selected and various other information. This feature depends on the type of radio fitted.

These displays are in addition to the radio display – see separate operating instructions for radio.

## Auto-Check system

In addition to the warning lights the Auto-Check System consistently monitors certain individual functions and components of the vehicle as soon as the ignition is turned on and when the vehicle is moving.

Malfunctions or urgent repairs are audibly signaled as well as displayed by red (priority 1) or yellow (priority 2) light symbols in the instrument cluster.

You are thus reminded that a problem exists which should be corrected for your convenience and safety, and to prevent the risk of considerable damage to your vehicle due to certain malfunctions.

The Auto-Check System incorporates a **speed warning feature** and is also used to display certain **radio information**.

The following malfunctions or warnings can be displayed:



### Red Symbols (priority 1)

Engine coolant level is too low/  
Engine temperature is too high  
(moving symbol).



Engine oil pressure is too low  
(moving symbol).



When the red blinking symbols appear, **three** warning tones will sound at the same time. These symbols represent **Danger**.

 **Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The problem must be located and corrected immediately.**

Pull off the road to a safe area, well away from traffic, stop the engine and operate the emergency flasher. Use other warning devices to alert motorists. Contact your authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of multiple malfunctions, the symbols will blink successively in two-second intervals. The symbols will continue to blink until the malfunction is corrected.

### Note

If a malfunction is detected while you are using the Navigation System, the Navigation System display will be switched off for a few seconds and the Priority 1 Warning symbol will appear. After that, the symbol will change into the Priority 2 display, and the Navigation System will be visible once again.

As long there is a Priority 1 malfunction present, Priority 2 malfunctions will not be displayed.



### Yellow Symbols (priority 2)

Brake light is defective



Headlight and/or tail light is defective



Brake pads worn



Windshield wiper fluid reservoir level is too low (moving symbol)



Fuel level is low



Battery voltage is too low/too high



Check engine oil level



Engine oil sensor defective



Speed warning (USA Models)



Speed warning (Canada Models)



Dynamic headlight dimmer control not functioning



When the yellow symbols appear, only **one** warning tone will sound at the same time. These symbols represent a **Warning**. Have the malfunction displayed corrected as soon as possible. In the event of multiple malfunctions, the symbols will appear successively in two-second intervals.



### Test button

The test button can be used to perform the following functions:

#### Checking the display

With the car stationary and with the ignition on, you can check the symbols one after the other by briefly pushing on the knob. The engine can either be running or not. Performing this brief check assures you that the display is functioning properly. When driving, you cannot check the function.

### Calling up driver information

When a first priority symbol is flashed up, the accompanying driver information can be called up in the display for assistance.

For example: "SWITCH OFF ENGINE; CHECK OIL LEVEL".

Press the test button to call up this display. The information disappears about 5 seconds after the button is released again.



### Operation

After switching on the ignition in selector lever position P or N, the driver instruction "WHEN STATIONARY APPLY FOOT-BRAKE WHILE SELECTING GEAR" will appear.

When a gear ("R", "D", etc.) is selected, the driver instruction disappears and a functional check is carried out automatically as a result of operating the brake pedal.

If the functions monitored by the auto-check system are working properly, the letters "OK" will light up for a few seconds.

If there are one or more faults, the driver information disappears about 15 seconds after the engine has been started and the appropriate fault symbol appears in the display.

If neither "OK" nor any other fault symbol appear in the display, the auto-check system must itself be checked.

## Displays

In case of a malfunction or component failure, the acoustic warning will sound and the following symbols can appear.

## Brake light

### USA models:

**BRAKE  
LIGHT**



### Canada models:

The following electrical components should be checked, repaired or replaced, as necessary:

- Brake light bulbs
- Fuses
- All wiring connections

## Engine coolant temperature / level



If the light flashes, either the coolant temperature is too high, or the coolant level is too low.

**If the light starts to flash, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, depress the emergency flasher switch, turn off the engine and let it cool down.**

Check coolant level. Top up as necessary (see "Cooling system", page 238).



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## **WARNING**

- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood. Heed all of the **WARNINGS** on page 232.

- To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.

- Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.

## **WARNING continued**

- Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps:

- If the coolant reservoir cap must be removed, wait until the engine has cooled down.

- Protect face, hands, and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.

- Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.

- To help avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

- If a visual check shows the coolant level and the V-belt normal, and the warning light still does **not** go out, **do not continue driving**. See your authorized Audi Dealer.

- If the coolant level and the V-belt are normal, the malfunction may be in the auxiliary radiator fan. You can continue driving to the nearest authorized Audi Dealer. The wind from the moving vehicle and the main radiator fan driven by the V-belt will be enough to keep the engine cool. However, avoid idling for a long time or driving very slowly.

If the V-belt is torn, the main radiator fan, the power steering and the generator will also not work.

### **Obtain expert assistance.**

Refer to "Coolant temperature gauge" on page 118 for details.

**Engine oil pressure**

If this warning light comes on, it indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

**Stop the engine immediately, check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary.**

**If engine oil level is normal but the light comes on again, do not continue to operate the vehicle. This could damage the engine.**

Turn the engine off and contact the nearest Audi Dealer for assistance.

**The oil pressure warning light is not an indicator for low engine oil level. To check the oil level, always use dipstick (see page 235).**

**Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked with every fuel filling.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

**Brake pads worn**

See your Audi Dealer promptly to have front and rear brake pads checked and replaced as necessary.

**Headlights / tail lights**

Check, repair or replace:

- Light bulbs
- Fuses
- Electrical connections.

**Washer fluid**

Replenish the windshield washer fluid in the container (see page 250).

**Fuel**

Pull into the next filling station and fill up.

**Battery voltage too high or too low**

See your Audi Dealer promptly to locate and correct the problem. The battery may be run down, the generator may be overcharging, or the V-belt tension may need adjustment.

The voltage in the electrical system is displayed on the voltmeter. See page 120 for additional details.



## Check engine oil level



Check the engine oil level as soon as possible by using the dip stick. Add engine oil accordingly. See page 236.

## Engine oil sensor defective



Contact an authorized Audi dealer and have the engine oil sensor inspected.

## Speed warning



or



The stored speed has been exceeded. Slow down or set new speed.

## Dynamic headlight dimmer control\* not functioning



Have your authorized Audi dealer repair the headlight dimmer control.

Refer to "Xenon lights" on page 157 for details.

## Speed warning



You can store a road speed which is not to be exceeded. As soon as you exceed that speed by approximately 6 miles (10 kilometers), a warning tone sounds and "MPH" ("km/h") appears in the display.

### Note

Always monitor the vehicle speed by means of the speedometer. The speed warning device may only be used as a reminder not to exceed the posted speed limit.

The following describes how to store or delete **speed warnings 1 and 2**.

## Speed warning 1



The "MPH" ("km/h") disappears when you reduce the speed below the stored speed. Also, the "MPH" goes out when the driving speed increases approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) over the set speed for at least 10 seconds. The stored speed is not deleted.

## Selecting speed limit

Press the test button for the Auto-Check control briefly when the desired speed is indicated on the speedometer. The speed warning symbol lights up when the button is released to confirm that the selected speed has been stored.

The set speed limit remains stored until another speed is selected by pressing the button again or until the memory is cleared.



### Cancelling speed limit

Press the test button for at least 1 second when the vehicle is moving at a speed above 3 miles (5 km/h). The display will show the warning symbol crossed through to confirm that the speed limit has been cleared.

### Speed warning 2



When the ignition is switched off, the driver can store a **permanent speed limit warning** in the unit.

The warning is shown in the display as described. The warning symbol only goes out once the road speed has fallen below the stored value again.

We recommend to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit in addition to speed limit warning 1. (For instance when driving in countries with general speed limits or if a particular speed should not be exceeded when winter tires are fitted, etc.)

### Selecting speed limit

- Press the test button briefly with the **ignition switched off**. The mileage recorder display will then light up.
- Press the test button again and hold for at least 2 seconds. The speed limit currently set appears in the display.
- To change the speed limit, press the top or bottom of the function selector switch for the trip computer (see arrow illustration). The speed limit displayed will then increase or decrease by 6 miles (10 km/h) at a time.



- A few seconds after the button is released, the display lighting goes out again.

### Cancelling speed limit

Press the test button briefly **with the ignition switched off**; the display will light up. Press the test button again for at least 2 seconds: the display will show the speed limit currently set. Now press and hold the "Reset" button for the trip computer until the crossed-out warning symbol appears.

## Trip computer



This feature generates much helpful information by simple touch control. For the driver's convenience, the computer's memory display window is integrated in the instrument cluster.

The **computer function control switches** are located in the windshield wiper switch lever.

The switches are functional only when the ignition is turned on. Depressing the upper or lower edge of the rocker switch (see arrow in illustration) will display functions either in forward or reverse order.

**The "Reset" touch control on the bottom of the switch serves several functions.**

By depressing "Reset" for 2 seconds, the "driving time", "average fuel consumption", and "average driving speed" can be reset.

The "miles or kilometres to empty" display cannot be reset.

By pushing "Reset" briefly, the computer's alert signal for driving time can be interrupted.

The digital display in the instrument cluster can be switched on and off by pressing the "Reset" button briefly.

**When the ignition is switched on**, the display shows the function that was last selected.

All the stored values are cancelled if the battery is disconnected.



The trip computer has five display modes:

- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Miles or kilometres to empty
- Driving time (maximum range is 23 hours: 59 minutes)
- Average fuel consumption
- Average driving speed

The instantaneous fuel consumption is shown in the illustration by way of an example.

**USA models:**

computer calculations are displayed in the USA measuring system

**Canada models:**

computer calculations are displayed in the metric system

**l/100 km – Instantaneous (MPG) fuel consumption**

Fuel consumed instantaneously is measured every 100 feet or 30 meters and displayed in units of miles per gallon (MPG) or liters per 100 kilometres (l/100km). When this function is selected right after engine start-up, the display will show the **average** fuel consumption figure for the first 100 feet or 30 meters. When the vehicle is stationary, the last unit measured will be displayed.

**km – Kilometres or miles to (Mi) empty**

The displayed information (indicated in stages of 5 miles or 10 kilometres) is based on the average fuel consumption computed during the last 20 miles or 30 kilometers.

This feature informs the driver how many miles or kilometres of normal and smooth driving can be covered with whatever amount of fuel remains in the tank. Fuel economy is the result of good driving habits.

**h – Driving time**

Driving time elapsed will remain in storage, even after the ignition is turned off. Further driving time will be added automatically after engine restart. Maximum storage and display range is 23 hours: 59 minutes. To keep track of driving time between points, depress "Reset" for zero.

**Driving time alert**

While driving, the computer will automatically switch to the "driving time" display every two hours. The indicator "2:00" (or "4:00", "6:00", "8:00" etc.) will blink in the display window to alert the driver to take a break. The blinker can be turned off briefly by pushing "Reset" or either side of the switch.

If the ignition is off **more** than ten minutes, the driving time alert counter will automatically start again from zero. If the ignition is off **less** than ten minutes, the display will blink again every two hours.

**Ø  $\frac{l}{100 km}$  (MPG) – Average fuel consumption**

The display will show the computed average since the last "Reset". When the ignition is turned off, the computed average remains in storage. When driving is resumed, the computation continues automatically. To delete stored data, push "Reset".

**Ø km/h – Average driving (MPH) speed**

The display will show the computed average of driving speed variations since the last "Reset". When the ignition is turned off, the computed average remains in storage. When driving is resumed, the computation continues automatically. To delete stored data, push "Reset".

## Switches



### Light switch

○ – all lights off<sup>1)</sup>

☰☷ – all lights on, except headlights

☰☷ – headlights (only with ignition on) and all other lights on.



This switch also operates the front and rear fog lights: it can pulled out when the side lights or headlights are switched on.

To conserve battery power, the headlights will go out automatically when the ignition is turned off or while the starter is engaged.

High beam, low beam and headlight flasher, see page 156.

### Automatic headlight adjustment

After you start the engine, as well as while the vehicle is moving, the headlights automatically adjust themselves to the load and angle of the vehicle (for example, during acceleration or braking). This prevents unnecessary glare for on-coming traffic.

If the system is not operating properly, the warning symbol in the Auto Check Control – see page 144 – will come on.

### Daytime running lights (Canada models only)

When the ignition is switched on, the fog lights, side marker lights and tail lights will automatically come on.



### WARNING

**Accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.**

- **Never use daytime running lights to see where you're going. They are not bright enough and won't let you see for enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it's dark.**
- **Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your car from the back.**

<sup>1)</sup> Canada models:

**Daytime running lights**

**Front fog lights**

Do not try to turn the light switch toward the front fog light symbol.

With ignition on, the fog lights can be switched on in combination with low beams.

Turn the light switch to the headlight position and pull the switch out to the **first stop**.

The front fog light symbol next to the switch will light up.

Please observe local regulations when using the fog lights.

**Rear fog light**

Do not try to turn the light switch toward the rear fog light symbol.

With ignition on, the rear fog light can be switched on in combination with low beams.

Turn the light switch to the headlight position and pull the switch out to the **second stop**.

The front and rear fog light symbols next to the switch will light up.

The vehicle is equipped with one rear fog light, located on the left side in the rear lid of the vehicle. The front fog lights will come on automatically when the rear fog light is switched on.

The rear fog light can distract drivers behind you, so it must only be switched on in conditions of very poor visibility. Please observe local regulations when using the rear fog light.

**General note**

If the lights are left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, a buzzer sounds when the driver's door is opened. This is your reminder to switch off the lights before leaving the vehicle.

**Instrument illumination**

With the **ignition on**, the basic level of brightness of the displays in the instrument cluster and the displays in the center console can be set by turning the thumbwheel.

The selected level of brightness automatically adjusts to suit the prevailing light conditions.

When the **lights are switched on**, you can adjust the brightness of the instruments, all displays and the illumination of the center console by turning the thumbwheel.



### 1 and 4 – Electrically heated seats\*



The heating elements in both seats can be turned on and regulated separately with the two thumbwheel switches.

With the ignition on, the seat cushion and backrest of the front seats can be heated electrically.

1 – Use this thumbwheel switch to activate and regulate the heating elements in the driver's seat.

4 – Use this thumbwheel switch to activate and regulate the heating elements in the front passenger's seat.

From position 0, roll thumbwheel upward to activate the heating elements.

Select the desired temperature setting between positions 1–6. When the heating elements are activated, the numbers on the thumbwheel will light up.

The **steering wheel heating\*** is switched on automatically when the seat heating is switched on. The temperature, however, remains at a constant preset level and cannot be regulated with the thumbwheel (1).

#### Note

To prevent possible damage to the heating elements, do not kneel on the seats or in any other way apply a heavy load to relatively small areas of the seat.



The heating elements\* for the left and right seating positions of the rear seat bench are switched on and off and regulated by the thumbwheel in the center console:

a – left

b – right

The rear seat heating\* only operates when a sensor registers the weight of the occupant on the seat.

Select the desired temperature setting between positions 1–6. When the heating elements are activated, the numbers on the thumbwheel will light up.



## 2 – Defrosting windows

See climate controls, page 163.



## 3 – Rear window defogger



The rear window defogger works only with the ignition on.

Depress the switch to turn on the rear window defogger. The indicator light in the switch will light up.

When outside air temperatures are above 32°F (0°C) the rear window defogger will turn off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.



***In order to save electricity, switch off the defogger when the rear window is clear. The light in the switch will go out.***

***When you save electricity, you save fuel. See "Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution", page 195.***

The rear window defogger is not designed for melt snow. Therefore, always remove heavy snow and ice accumulations before driving off.





## 1 – Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

The ESP is switched on automatically when the engine is started. If required, it can also be switched on and off manually by briefly pressing the switch.

When the system is switched off, the warning light comes on. See page 124.

See page 205 for further details.

## 2 – Emergency flasher



The emergency flasher works independently of the ignition switch position.

If your vehicle is disabled or parked under emergency conditions, depress the switch to make all four turn signals flash simultaneously. The warning light in the switch flashes too.



## WARNING

**To avoid being struck by another vehicle, move your vehicle a safe distance off the road when stalled or stopped for repairs. Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material that can cause fire.**

When the airbag deploys in an accident, the emergency flasher also will come on.

## Ride height adjustment (4 Level Air Suspension)



The ride height level can be adjusted **automatically** or **manually** – depending on the vehicle's speed:

- **Low level** – Reduced ground clearance, like a sport suspension. The lowest green LED will come in the level display (2).

In automatic mode, the vehicle will automatically lower to the low level after it reaches about 75 mph (120 km/h). The system builds in a brief delay before this happens. If the speed drops below about 45 mph (70 km/h) for an extended period, the system resumes the normal level.

- **Normal level** – Standard ground clearance. The two lower green LED's will now be lit in the level display (2).

- **High level** – Increased ground clearance for rough roads and trails. The three lower LED's will now be lit in the level display (2).

- **Highest level** – Ride height level for extremely rough roads and terrain. All four green LED's will now be lit in the level display (2).

### Notes

- If you manually select "High" or "Highest" while the automatic mode is on, but the vehicle has slowed down to the point where it lowers to "Normal" or "Low" level, the system will automatically raise the vehicle back to the "High" position.

When does this happen?

- If the vehicle speed falls below 38 mph (60 km/h), this will happen after about 30 seconds.
- If the vehicle speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h), this will happen right away.

You can deactivate this mode either by manually selecting Normal or Low level, or by switching off the ignition.

To activate this mode again, first switch on the ignition and then select High or Highest level.

- In the manual mode, the automatic switching to High level and automatic lowering to low level at high vehicle speeds are deactivated.

● **When you park your vehicle, make certain that there is enough clearance above the roof. Sometimes changes in temperature or load will cause the vehicle to raise itself automatically. The roof could get damaged if there isn't enough clearance.**



### Manual mode

To switch from the automatic mode to the manual mode, press button **(1)** or **(3)** for at least 2 seconds. Press again to return to the automatic mode.

The yellow LED in the display **(2)** will be lit in the manual mode.

### Increasing the vehicle ride height manually

To make certain that the system functions properly, do not raise the vehicle ride height unless the engine is running.

Press button **(3)** to adjusting the vehicle to the **next higher level**, ending at the **high level**.

Once you are in the high level, you can go to the **highest level** by pressing the button again.

Levels that have been selected but not yet reached by the vehicle are indicated by flashing LED's in the level indicator **(2)**.

The current actual level is indicated by continuously lit LED's.

### Manually lowering the ride height

Press button **(1)** to go to the **next lower level**. You can repeat this until you've selected the **low level**.

The next level that was selected but has not been reached by the vehicle is indicated by a continuously lit LED in the level indicator **(2)**.

The current actual level is indicated by flashing LED's.

### Notes

- The control operations are dependent on the vehicle's current speed. For example, it is not possible to manually switch to the high level or highest level when the vehicle is going above a certain speed.

Likewise, if you have already selected the high or highest level, and the vehicle speeds up above a certain speed, the system automatically switches down to the next lower level.

For example, at about 20 mph (35 km/h) the vehicle will lower from the highest level to the high level. Beginning at about 50 mph (80 km/h), the system switches from the high level to normal level.

**Notes continued**

- At excessive loads (for example, overheating caused by frequent changes in the ride height when the vehicle is stationary), the system is temporarily deactivated for safety reasons. The system will return to full operation once it has cooled down.
- The system automatically switches to the normal level if the ESP automatically shuts off (see page 205). If this happens, switch the ignition off, and then on again. Now you can select the desired level once again.

**Jack mode****Activating**

Before **lifting** the vehicle with a jack or lift, press buttons **(1)** and **(3)** **at the same time** for at least 5 seconds with the ignition switched on.

When the system is in the jack mode, the LED's on control buttons **(1)** and **(3)**, the yellow LED for the manual mode on the level indicator **(2)** and the warning light for level control in the instrument cluster (see page 123) will all come on.

Once this happens, turn off the ignition. The vehicle can now be lifted.

**Deactivating**

To deactivate the jack mode, press buttons **(1)** and **(3)** at the same time for at least 5 seconds. The warning light in the instrument cluster, the LED for manual mode, and the LED's on the control buttons will all turn off.

The original system state and full functionality of the ride height system are now restored.

In addition, the jack mode will automatically be deactivated when vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h).

**WARNING**

- **Make certain that no one is lying under the vehicle or has his / her head or hands in the wheel house while the ride height is changing or when a jack is being used.**
- **Changes in outside temperature, in vehicle loads or in other conditions will cause the vehicle to adjust it's level automatically.**

## Turn signals, headlight dimmer switch lever



### Turn signals



The turn signals only work when the ignition is switched on.

The turn signal indicator light flashes when you operate the lever (ignition on).

- Lever up – right turn signals
- Lever down – left turn signals.

The turn signals are cancelled automatically when you have completed a turn (for example, when turning a corner), and the steering wheel returns to the straight ahead position.

If a turn signal fails, the indicator light flashes about twice as fast. A light bulb may have to be replaced.

### Lane changer

Move the lever up or down just to the point of resistance – the indicator light must also flash at the same time. The lever will return to the OFF position when released.



### Switching the high beam on / off



The headlights work only when the ignition is switched on.

#### Switching on:

With the headlights on, push the lever forward.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster will come on.

#### Switching off:

Pull the lever towards you.

### Headlight flasher

You can signal with your headlights by pulling the lever toward the steering wheel.

When flashing headlights, the blue indicator light will come on.

### Xenon lights\*

After starting the engine the Xenon headlights are automatically adjusted to the load and angle of the vehicle (for example, during acceleration, braking). This prevents oncoming traffic from experiencing unnecessary glare from your headlights.

If the system is not operating properly, a warning symbol will be displayed in the Auto Check Control – see page 144.

## Cruise control



For your driving comfort the cruise control system can be used to keep the vehicle speed constant, as long as the engine power and braking are not affected, beginning at about 25 mph (40 km/h).

### **⚠ WARNING**

- **To help keep the vehicle under control, do not use the cruise control when driving on winding or slippery roads, or in heavy or varying traffic.**
- **Only use cruise control when traffic and weather conditions allow you to drive at a steady speed.**
- **To prevent unintended operation of cruise control, turn it off when it is not being used.**
- **It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too fast for existing traffic conditions.**

The system is operated with switch **A** and button **B** located on the turn signal lever.

### Switching the system on

Slide switch **A** to **ON**.

### Setting speed

When the vehicle reaches the speed to be maintained, push button **B (SET)**. Now you can take your foot off the gas pedal.

You can increase the speed by using the accelerator pedal. When the pedal is released, the system continues to control the vehicle at the speed previously set.

However, this will not occur if the vehicle speed exceeds the speed that was set by more than 6 miles per hour (10 km/h) for longer than 5 minutes. The speed will then have to be set again.

## Changing the speed

### Decelerate / Set

Press button **B** to reduce the speed.

By briefly pressing button **B**, you reduce the speed in stages. If you hold the button down, the speed decreases automatically. The speed the car is then going when you release the button will be the new speed that is stored.

If the button is released below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h), the memory is erased. The speed must then be reset using button **B** after the vehicle accelerates above 25 mph (40 km/h).

### Accelerate / Set

You can increase speed by sliding the switch **A** to **RES** without having to press the gas pedal.

By sliding the switch briefly toward **RES**, you can increase the speed in stages. If you slide the switch and hold it in place, the speed increases steadily. The speed that the vehicle is going when you release the switch is the new speed that is stored.


## Switching off the system temporarily

The system is temporarily switched off by stepping on the brake pedal, or by sliding switch **A** towards **OFF**.

The speed that is stored at this time is maintained.

The speed you are going at the time you temporarily switched off the system is stored and can be retrieved.

To retrieve and **resume** the speed that was previously stored, slide the switch **A** to **RES** after taking your foot off the brake pedal.

	<b>WARNING</b>
<b>It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too fast for existing traffic conditions.</b>	

## Setting the speed


You can set the speed if no speed was set when the system was temporarily switched off, or if the speed was erased:

- Slide switch to the **RES** and hold it until the desired speed is reached. Release the switch and speed is stored.

or

- Depress the gas pedal until you reach the desired speed, and press button **B** briefly. The speed is stored.

## Switching the system off completely

	<b>WARNING</b>
<b>To prevent unintended operation of cruise control, turn it off when it is not being used.</b>	

- sliding switch **A** to the right stop (OFF)
- by switching off the ignition when the vehicle is stopped.



## Wiper and washer system

The wiper and washer system only works when the ignition is on.

The **heated washer jets** do not have a separate switch. Depending on the outside temperature, the heated washer jets will operate when the ignition is on.

**To prevent damage to the wiping system, always loosen blades frozen to glass before operating wipers.**

### Notes

- Filling washer container, see page 250.
- Replacing wiper blades, see page 251.

### **WARNING**

**Always heed WARNINGS on page 161.**



### Windshield

- **Wiper off:**  
Lever in position **0**
- **One-tap wiping**  
Lever in position **1**

- **Intermittent wiping:**

Lever in position **2**

You can adjust to wiping intervals to four different settings using the small lever **A**.

Turn the small lever **A** to the right – shorter intervals

Turn the small lever **A** to the left – longer intervals

In each setting, the intervals are also controlled by the speed of the vehicle.

- **Low wiper speed**

Lever in position **3**

- **High wiper speed**

Lever in position **4**

### **Automatic wiper / washer**

Pull lever toward steering wheel and hold – wipers and washer work (position **5**).

When the lights are on, the headlight washers are also activated when the lever is held in this position for more than about one second.

Release lever –

The washer stops and the wipers keep going for about four seconds.



## Rear window

### 1 – Intermittent wiping

The wiper works about every six seconds. Pull lever back again briefly to switch rear wiper off.

### 2 – Automatic wiper / washer

Press lever away from steering wheel and hold – the wiper and the washer work as long as lever is held in this position.

Release lever –

The washer stops and the wiper continues for about four seconds.

## WARNING

- **Worn or dirty wiper blades will reduce visibility, making driving hazardous. Clean blades regularly to remove road film and carwash wax buildup. Use an alcohol base cleaning solution, a lint free cloth and wipe along the blade.**

- **Clean all inside and outside window glass regularly. Use an alcohol base cleaning solution and wipe dry with a lint free or a chambris cloth.**

- **Do not use the wiper / washer in freezing weather without first warming the windshield with the defrosters, otherwise the washer solution may freeze on the windshield and obscure your vision.**

- **Avoid running the wiper blades over a dry windshield to prevent scratching the glass. A scratched windshield will reduce visibility and increase glare at night.**



## Headlight washer

When the headlights are switched on, the headlight lenses are washed each time the windshield washer is operated.

The headlight washer jets come out automatically (under water pressure) when the washers are operated.

Clean off dirt or insects from the lenses at regular intervals, for example, when refueling.

To ensure that the system works properly in winter, keep the washer jets free of snow and remove any ice with de-icer spray.

Filling washer container, see page 250.

## Climate controls

### WARNING

● **For clear visibility and safe driving, it is extremely important that you follow the operating instructions on the proper use and function of the ventilation/heating, defogging/defrosting and air conditioning system in this manual. If in doubt, consult your authorized Audi Dealer.**

● **Good visibility comes with clean windows free of fog, condensation and frost.**

● **Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will occur only after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before moving your vehicle.**

**The air conditioner is fully automatic**, and is designed to maintain a comfortable and uniform climate inside the vehicle.

The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the fan speed, air distribution and volume of air delivery are regulated automatically.

This automatic climate control program can also be adjusted manually by the driver and the front passenger.

The illustration on the next page shows the controls for the driver and front passenger in the center console. The left display indicates the temperature selected for the driver's side and the right display the temperature selected for the front passenger's side. The temperature is selected by pressing the "+" or "-" buttons beneath the respective displays.

**Recommended standard setting for all-year operation:**

After switching on the ignition

● **Select a temperature of 75 °F (23°C) and**

● **Press AUTO button.**

With this setting, you attain maximum comfort in the least amount of time.

You only need to change this setting to meet your personal needs.

Air outlets – see page 165.

## Operating controls

The functions are switched on and off by pressing the buttons briefly. The indicator in the button comes on when the function is operating.

### AUTO – Automatic (standard setting)

The air temperature, air flow and air distribution are regulated automatically to achieve and maintain the desired passenger compartment temperature as quickly as possible. The system compensates for changes in outside temperature and for the intensity of the sunlight entering the vehicle automatically.


### – + Temperature setting

The desired interior temperature can be pre-set within a range from 64°F (18°C) to 84°F (29°C). In the two extreme settings "LO" and "HI" the system operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output, so the temperature is no longer regulated automatically.



### Switching between Fahrenheit and Centigrade

**The temperature display can be switched from °F to °C (and vice versa) as follows:**

Press  button and hold down. At the same time press temperature selector button "+" on driver side briefly.

### – Defrost

In this mode, the windshield and side windows will be defrosted / defogged as quickly as possible.

The temperature is controlled automatically. Air flow will be on the maximum setting and will mainly flow from outlets 1 and 2. See "Air outlets" on page165.

## – Air recirculation

In the air recirculation mode, the supply of outside air is blocked and the air in the passenger compartment is recirculated. This helps to prevent pollutant-containing outside air from entering the passenger compartment. It is best not to use this setting for extended periods of time.

**If the windows begin to fog or ice up, select the  program setting as soon as possible.**

### **WARNING**

- **You will not receive any fresh outside air when air recirculation is on. Do not use this setting over long periods of time because stale air contributes to fatigue and reduced driver alertness.**
- **If the windows fog up, press the air recirculation button again immediately to switch off the air recirculation function or select defrost.**

## **ECON – Economy**

The air conditioner compressor can be turned off to save fuel. However, the comfort level that the system can achieve in this mode limited.

If the interior of the vehicle gets too hot, or if the windows begin to fog or ice up, press the ECON button again to turn the compressor on again and switch back to AUTO.

## **OFF – Switching air conditioner off**

The air conditioner can be switched off by pressing the button briefly. This cuts off the supply of air from the outside.

**To reactivate the air conditioner,** press the AUTO button or one of the blower, temperature or air distribution selector buttons, or press OFF again.

It is not normally necessary to switch off the air conditioner.




## **– + Fan speed**


The automatically selected fan speed (volume of air delivery) can be reduced or increased manually by operating these buttons. The selected fan speed is shown by a segment display above the buttons.

## – Rear window defogger


See page 151.

## **Air distribution selector buttons**

The automatically programmed air distribution can be altered manually with the buttons , , and . The buttons can be operated singly or in combination.

To return to the automatically programmed air distribution, switch off the selected manual functions separately or by pressing the "AUTO" or  buttons.

## – Air directed to windows

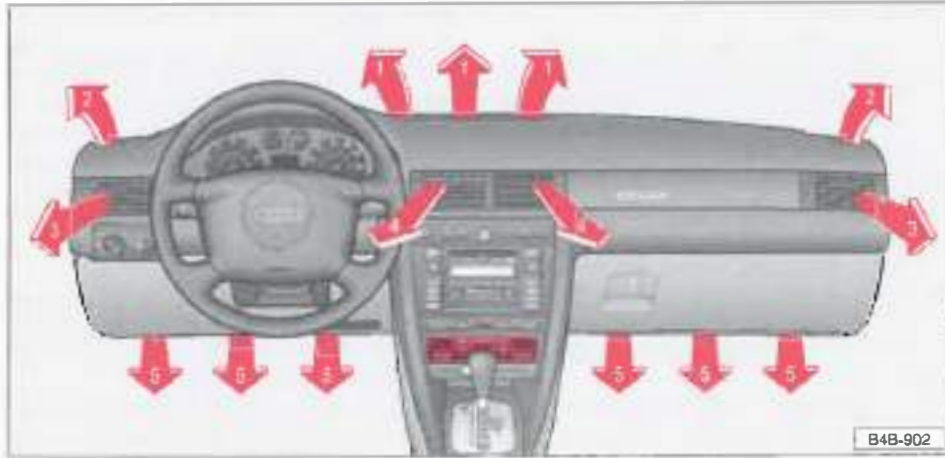
Unlike setting , this setting directs **all** the air to outlets 1 and 2.

## – Air from dashboard outlets and rear of center console

All the air comes from outlets 3 and 4.

## – Air to footwells

All the air comes from outlets 5 and from the outlets under the front seats.



## Air outlets

Depending on the operating mode selected, the air flow to the outlets is controlled either automatically or manually.

The illustration shows the air outlets in and around the dashboard.

The outlets deliver either heated or unheated fresh air, or cooled air.

- 1 - Outlets over full width of windshield
- 2 - Side window defroster / defogger nozzles
- 3 - Side dashboard and rear console vents
- 4 - Center dashboard vents
- 5 - Footwell outlets

**Outlets 2, 3 and 4** can be opened or closed separately with the respective thumbwheel next to the outlets.

The direction of air delivery from these outlets can be adjusted horizontally and vertically. The upper outlets (2) are not adjustable.

### Note

When the air conditioner is cooling the vehicle interior, the cool air mainly emerges from outlets 3 and 4. To ensure adequate cooling, these outlets should therefore never be closed completely.



The above illustration shows the outlets at the rear of the center console.

Air is directed to these outlets automatically.

The heater outlets for the rear footwell are located under the front seats. They are controlled together with outlet 5.

### Solar roof\*

On models with a solar sliding roof, if the vehicle is parked in sufficiently strong sunlight and the ignition has been turned off, the blower automatically switches to the solar-powered mode. The blower motor runs on solar energy, keeping the vehicle's interior supplied with fresh air.

For optimum air delivery the center (4) and the side dashboard vents (3) should be opened.

The solar-powered fan only works when the sliding roof is closed or raised open at the rear.

If the ventilation system happens to be set to the recirculate mode, the climate control system automatically switches to the fresh air mode.

### Key coding

To achieve maximum comfort levels, the current manual settings for the air conditioning system are automatically saved.


For example, if the air conditioning settings were changed when someone else used your car, the air condition system will automatically be reset to the settings that match your key when you turn on the ignition again.

This assumes that the previous driver used a key other than yours. If the previous driver used your key, his or her new settings would be assigned to your key.

If a number of persons use the vehicle, then if possible, each should use a different key. In this way, your personal air conditioning setting will be restored automatically.

## General notes

- Vehicle heating is depend upon the temperature of the engine coolant – therefore, your vehicle interior will warm up only when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

When the ambient temperature is too low, the fan only switches to high speed modes when the coolant has reached a sufficiently high temperature, or when the  button has been depressed.

- Keeping the air intake slots in front of the windshield free from ice, snow and debris helps to make sure that the climate control system will work properly.
- When the air conditioner compressor is on it reduces both the temperature and the humidity of the air inside the vehicle. This prevents the windows from fogging up.
- The air conditioner works best with the windows and power roof\* closed.

- If the inside temperature is very high after the vehicle has been parked in the sun, open windows and allow the hot air to escape before switching on the air conditioner.

- The dust and pollen filter will prevent dust and pollen etc. in the outside air from entering the car. Switch to air recirculation to prevent unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle.

### If water drips under the vehicle...

At high outside temperatures and humidity, condensation may drip from the evaporator. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

### If the airflow is not cool...

- At low ambient temperatures the air conditioner compressor switches off automatically. The compressor cannot be switched on again in this case, even by pressing the AUTO button.

- The air conditioner may switch itself off temporarily to ensure sufficient engine cooling when the engine is running at full load.

The air conditioner will also be switched off temporarily in the kick-down function. See page 109.

- Check the air conditioning fuse on the fuse panel – see page 274. Have it replaced, if necessary.
- If you suspect that the air conditioner is damaged, for instance after an accident, switch to the ECON and have the system examined immediately for leaks or other damage.



### Maintenance

- For maximum efficiency of the air conditioner, the dust and pollen filter elements must be replaced at the intervals indicated in the Maintenance Schedule.
- The condenser must be checked regularly to make sure it is clean. If it becomes obstructed by dirt or insects, spray it clear with water.
- **Repairs to the Audi air conditioning system require specialized knowledge and special tools.**  
**If the system is not functioning properly, contact your Audi Dealer.**

### Power roof\*

The roof will slide open or tilt up at the rear as required. When the ignition is on it can be opened and closed by turning the rotary control next to the interior light. The roof is tilted open or closed by pressing or pulling the control – see illustration.

When turning the ignition off, however, the sunroof can still be operated as long as the driver's and front passenger's door are closed. When either door is opened, sliding roof operation will be deactivated.

Always close the roof completely if you are going to park your vehicle and leave.



### WARNING

**Be careful when closing the power roof / tilt roof. Not paying attention could cause you or others to be caught and injured as the roof closes. To help avoid injuries caused by closing the roof, always take your key whenever you leave your vehicle.**



## Opening and closing

### To open:

Turn the switch in direction **1**.

The switch can be set to any intermediate position.

When you turn the switch, you will be able to feel a point at which resistance builds up. In order to achieve a maximum comfort level when the roof is open, it's recommended that you only open the power roof to this point.

### To close:

Turn the switch to position **0**.

## WARNING

**Be careful when closing the power roof! Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result.**

### To lift:

Briefly press the control to tilt the roof up as far as it will go.

The roof can be set to any position in between by holding the switch until the roof reaches the desired position.

### To lower:

To move it all the way down again, pull the control briefly.

## Notes

- When the glass roof opens, the sun visor used to keep out strong sunlight is also opened automatically. If desired, the visor can be slid shut manually when the power roof is closed.

It is important to remember to close the power roof when parking the car or if it suddenly starts raining – especially when the sun shade is extended.

- The power roof is protected by a circuit breaker to prevent the electrical system from overloading. If the power roof will not close normally, it can be closed by pulling the control.

## Convenience closing

You can also close the power roof from the outside when locking your vehicle:

Hold the key in the close position in the driver's door.



### Emergency closing

If you cannot close the roof with the electric switch, you can still close the roof manually using a crank (see right illustration). The crank is located behind the fuse cover (see page 274).

In order to access the power roof motor, remove the interior light (lens and housing) as follows:

- Place the flat side of the screwdriver found in the vehicle tool kit on the rear side of the lens as shown in the illustration and carefully pry the lens downward.



- Then insert the screwdriver into the gap between the light housing and the frame in the rear on the side and carefully pry out the housing.

To **close** the roof, press the manual crank (1) into the hex socket (2) until it engages. Keep pressing down and turn the crank.

**Reinstall** the light housing and lens in the reverse order.

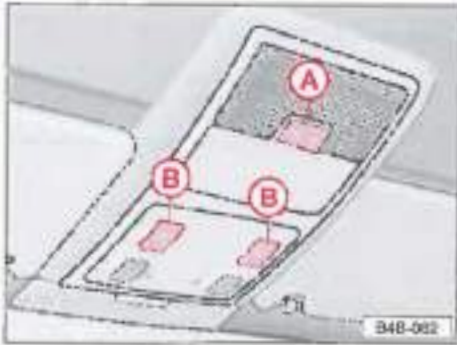
Have the problem corrected by your authorized Audi dealer.

### Power roof with solar panel\*

The solar panel is operated in the same way as the power roof. The roof's solar cells supply energy for the air conditioner blower. See page 166.

The interior trim is fixed to the solar panel cannot be opened and closed separately.

## Interior lights, reading lights



The **dome light** and the **front reading lights** are located above the windshield.

### A – Dome light

Switch positions:

**0** – Off

**Center position** – Door contact switch

The light is switched on when the doors are unlocked or when one of the doors is opened. The light comes also on when the key is removed from the steering lock.

### Interior light delay

The light stays on for about 30 seconds after it is activated. If one of the doors is left open the light goes out automatically after about 10 minutes.

The light goes off as soon as you lock the car or switch on the ignition.

**I** – On continuously

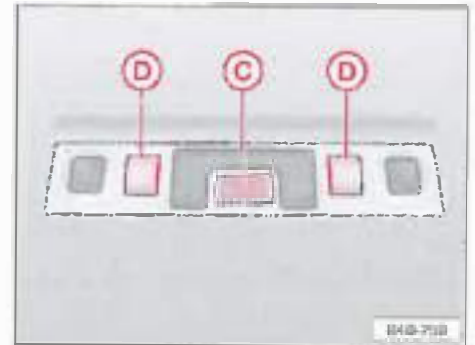
### Note

A dimmer automatically adjusts the brightness of the lights.

### B – Front reading lights



To turn the reading lights on and off press the switch (see symbol).



### C – Rear interior light

See "Dome light" for switch positions.

### D – Rear reading light



To turn the reading lights on and off press the switch (see symbol).

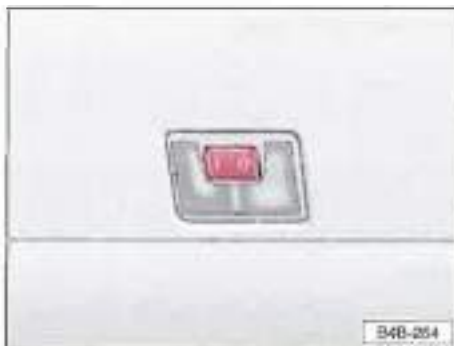


### Ambient lighting

When you switch on the ignition, the lights in the door handles come on automatically. The lights above the windshield come on when the headlights are switched on. The center console is illuminated from above.

You cannot manually turn these off.

### Luggage compartment light



### Luggage compartment light

The light is located at the top of the luggage compartment.

#### Switch positions:

**0** – Off

**Center position** – Light comes on when the rear lid is opened.

**I** – Luggage compartment light on continuously.

#### Delay function

See description on previous page.



### Rear lid light

The light in the rear lid comes on automatically when you open the lid. If you leave the lid open for longer than 10 minutes, the light will automatically switch off.

## Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter\*



The Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter is located on the driver's side sun visor.

This innovative feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most current transmitters used to activate garage doors, entry door locks, estate gates, security systems, and home or office lighting.

The HomeLink® Universal Transmitter is capable of operating up to three separately controlled devices.

The HomeLink® operates off the vehicle's battery and charging system and has non-volatile memory. If the battery dies or is disconnected, HomeLink® will retain all programming.

### **WARNING**

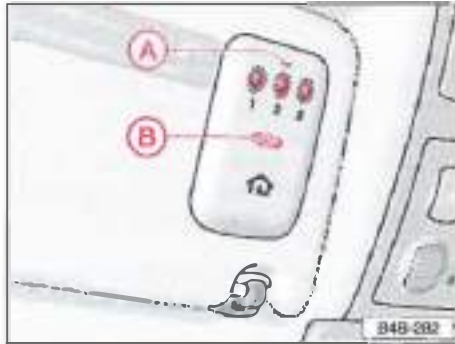
**When programming the Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter, you may be operating a garage door or estate gate. Make sure that people and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage.**

### **Note**

**Do not use this Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.**

**A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

**For more information, call toll-free:  
1 (800) 355-3515.**



- 1 - Channel 1
- 2 - Channel 2
- 3 - Channel 3
- A - Indicator Light
- B - Optimal placement of hand-held transmitter during training.

## Initial Programming of the Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter

- 1 - Turn the ignition switch on.
- 2 - Prepare for programming the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter by erasing the three factory default channels:  
Simultaneously press and hold channels 1 and 3 – releasing only when the indicator light (A) begins to flash after 20 seconds.
- 3 - Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter of the device you wish to train approximately 2 inches away from the surface of the HomeLink® channels – keeping the indicator light in view.
- 4 - Using both hands, simultaneously push the hand-held transmitter button and one of the HomeLink® channels. Do not release until step 5 has been completed.



- 5 - The HomeLink® indicator light will flash first slowly, and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both the button and channel may be released.

If you wish, repeat procedures 3 through 5 to program the remaining channels.

If a garage door opener has been programmed but does not activate with HomeLink®, proceed to the following section: "Training a Garage Door Equipped with Rolling Code".

## Training a Garage Door Equipped with Rolling Code

To train your rolling code garage door opener to operate from your HomeLink® Universal Transmitter, follow these steps **after completing the "Programming"** portion of this text (the aid of a second person may make the training quicker and easier):

- 1 - Locate and **press and release** the training (or "learning") button on the garage door opener motor head unit. (Exact location and color of the button may vary by garage door opener brand.) If there is difficulty locating the training button, reference the garage door opener owner's manual or call toll free: 1-800-355-3515.
- 2 - Return to the vehicle and press and release the programmed HomeLink® channel. Press and release the HomeLink® channel a second time to complete the programming process. (Some garage door openers may require you to do this procedure a third time.)

The garage door opener should now recognize the Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter. You may use either the hand-held transmitter or the Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter to activate the garage door.

## Operating the Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter

- 1 - **Turn** the ignition switch on.
- 2 - Select and firmly press and release the appropriate channel (1, 2, or 3) to activate the trained device (e.g. garage door, estate gate, home security system, entry door lock, or home or office lighting).

## Erasing the Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter's Programming

- 1 - Turn the ignition switch on.
- 2 - Simultaneously press and hold channels 1 and 3 until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds.
- 3 - Release both buttons.

This process will erase the trained codes of the three channels or erase the factory set default codes.

The Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter is now in the train (or programming) mode and can be programmed at any time following steps 3 through 5 in the "Programming" portion of this text.



## Reprogramming a Single Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter Channel

If a HomeLink® channel has been programmed to activate a device, and it has been decided to program another device using the same HomeLink® channel, follow these steps:

- 1 - Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button for approximately 20 seconds. Do **not** release until step 3 has been completed.
- 2 - When the indicator light begins to flash slowly, position the hand-held transmitter approximately 2 inches away from the HomeLink® surface. Press and hold the hand-held transmitter button.
- 3 - The indicator light will flash, first slowly, and then rapidly. When the indicator light begins to flash rapidly, release both the button and channel.

The previous device has now been erased and the new device has been programmed into HomeLink®. This procedure will not affect any other programmed HomeLink® channels.

## Accessories

Accessories for the Audi HomeLink® Universal Transmitter are available through various sources.

If you would like additional information on HomeLink®, where to purchase the HomeLink® compatible products, or would like to purchase the HomeLink® Home Lighting Package, please call toll-free: 1-800-355-3515.

## Notes

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to following conditions:

- 1 - This device may not cause any harmful interference and
- 2 - This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

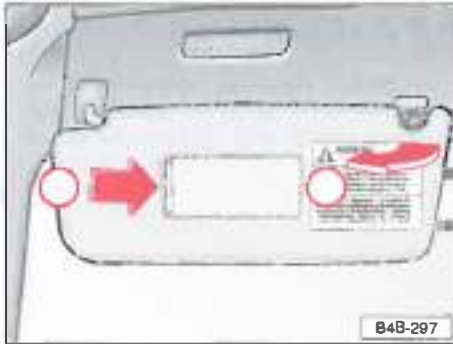


### WARNING

**The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and DOC/MDC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.**

DOC: ISTC 1763 102 264  
Prince MODEL/FCC ID: CB2 V94800

## Sun visors



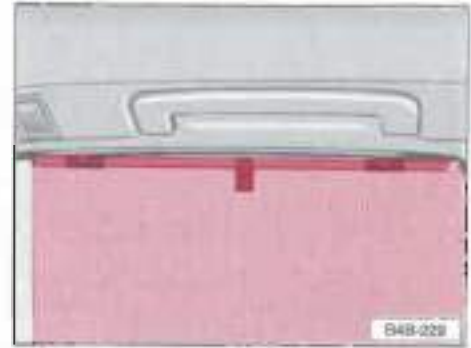
You can lift the visors out of the center mounting (arrow 1 in illustration) and move them toward the door windows to protect against side glare.

A vanity mirror is located on the back of the sun visors.

The light for the mirror (which is located in the roof) switches on automatically when the mirror cover is slid open (arrow 2) and switches itself off when the cover is closed. The light also switches itself off when the sun visor is pushed back up.

There is also a small folding sun visor located between the sun visors for the driver and front passenger. You can use this sun visor to cover the space about the rear-view mirror.

## Sun shade\*



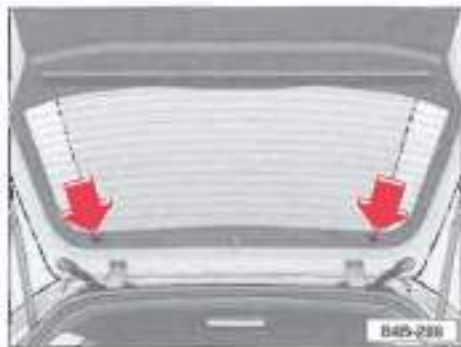
For protection against direct sunlight, always use the sun shade whenever you must park your vehicle exposed to the sun.

### Rear doors\*

The sun shade can be used to cut glare through the rear passengers' windows.

Pull out the shade and engage it in the hooks on the upper part of the door frame.

### Glove compartment



#### Rear window

Pull out the sun shade and engage it in the retainers (arrows) located on the upper part of the rear window frame.



Your Audi has a lockable glove compartment. Only the master keys or emergency key will lock or unlock the glove compartment. To open the lockable glove compartment, pull the handle in direction of arrow. The light will come on when the parking / headlights are switched on and the glove compartment is open.

To close, press glove compartment upward until lock engages.



#### WARNING

**To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.**

## Coat hooks



A fold-out coat hook is located above each rear door.

To release the coat hook, press the top part of the hook (arrow).

### **WARNING**

- **The coat hooks must only be used for light weight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.**

**Always heed all WARNINGS in chapter "AIRBAG SYSTEM".**

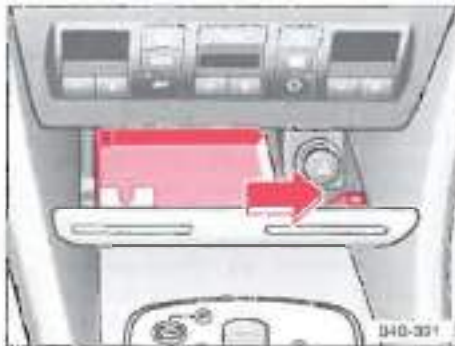
- **Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.**

- **Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.**

## Ashtray

### **WARNING**

Using ashtrays as waste paper receptacles is a fire hazard.



### **Front ashtray**

#### **To open ashtray**

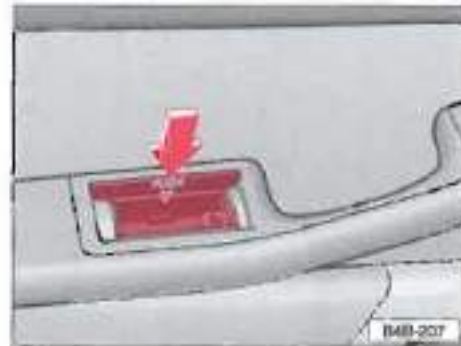
Press against face plate briefly.

#### **To empty ashtray**

Open the ashtray. Press the switch in direction indicated by the arrow to remove the ashtray.

#### **To reinstall ashtray**

Insert the ashtray and press into housing.



### **Rear ashtrays**

#### **To open ashtray**

Press the edge of the ashtray lid.

#### **To empty ashtray**

With the lid open, press the front side of the ashtray down (arrow) and lift the ashtray out.

#### **To reinstall ashtray**

Insert the ashtray and press downwards into its housing as far as it will go.

## Cigarette lighter / Socket



Push the knob in. When the **cigarette lighter** is ready for use, the knob will pop out again.

The **socket** for the cigarette lighter can be used for 12 volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 100 watts, such as a hand spot light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.



### **WARNING**

**The cigarette lighters and sockets remain functional even after the ignition key is removed. Therefore, to avoid injury, never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision.**

Remember, you can discharge the battery if the engine is not running and power is used to run an appliance connected to the socket. For more information, see "Additional accessories, Modifications and Parts replacement," page 262.

Only use plugs that fit properly, to avoid damaging the socket.



### **Electrical socket in the luggage compartment**

The electrical socket in the luggage compartment is located on the left side in the trim panel.

To fold the cover down, lightly press the cover.

## Storage compartments

### Cup holder

#### WARNING

● **Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.**

● **Use only soft cups in the cup holder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.**

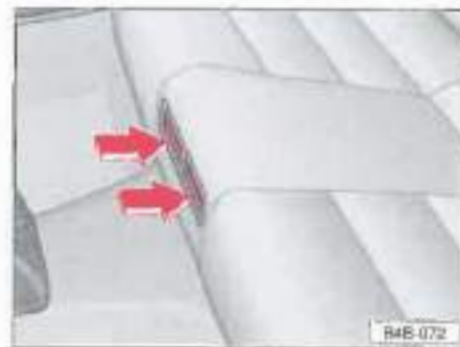


#### Center console

There is a **cup holder** on the right side of the center console.

Press the catch (arrow) to open the lid.

There is also a compartment and a **cup holder**<sup>1)</sup> next to the hand brake in the center console.



#### Rear seat

There are two **cup holders** in the front side of the rear seat.

To open, press the catch (arrows).

<sup>1)</sup> Not available on vehicles with Audi Navigation System.



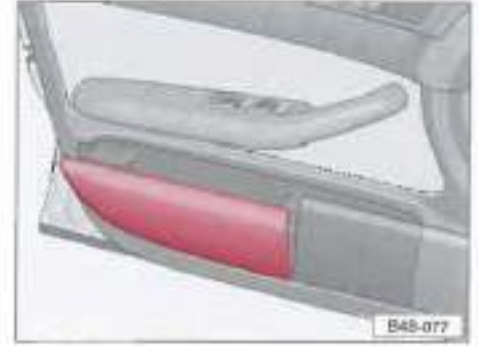
### Child seat bench\*

On both the left and right sides of the child seat bench, there are trays (partially removable), on which you can place beverages or food.



### Owner's literature storage

There's a special slot provided where you can store your Owner's Manual – see illustration.



### Compartments in the door trims

There are storage compartments in the door trims.

The front of the compartment can be tilted open for extra storage space (see illustration).





### **Luggage compartment**

The side compartments can be used for storing equipment such as a tow rope, jumper cables, etc.

To open, press the handle down and remove the cover.



### **CD changer\***

The CD changer for the Sound System is located in a compartment of the left side.

See the separate booklet for instructions on changing the CDs.

## Steering wheel with Audio controls\*

To help make certain that you are not distracted from paying proper attention to the traffic conditions when you are using the radio, switches have been provided on the steering wheel for basic audio functions for factory installed radios. The radio, cassette player, or CD player, can, of course, also be operated without restriction on the unit itself.

A detailed description of the radio is provided in a separate Sound System manual.

The following functions can be operated by pressing the buttons on the steering wheel:

### A – Seek / Advance

- Radio: seek forward
- Cassette player: fast forward
- CD: CD track forward

### B – Seek / Rewind

- Radio: seek in reverse direction
- Cassette player: fast rewind
- CD: CD-track back



### C – Increase volume

- Radio
- Cassette player
- CD

Depending on which unit is currently operating.

### D – Reduce volume

- Radio
- Cassette player
- CD

Depending on which unit is currently operating.

### E – Station buttons (Preset) / back

You can recall up to twelve stations one after another in the reverse direction.

If no stations are assigned to the presets or if they are not being received, you may only hear static.

### F – Station buttons (Preset) / forward

You can recall up to twelve stations one after another in the forward direction.

If no stations are assigned to the presets or if they are not being received, you may only hear static.

### Steering wheel with radio and telephone equipment in the steering wheel\*

If your radio or mobile telephone are factory-installed, switches for the radio and telephone functions are provided in the steering wheel to help you give your fullest attention to your driving responsibilities while operating the radio or telephone system. Of course, all the operating features of your radio, cassette/CD player, or telephone can still be accessed on this equipment itself.

Detailed description of the radio and Audi telephone are provided in separate operating manuals.



The following functions can be operated by pressing the button:

#### **A – Seek / Advance**

- Radio: seek in forward direction
- Cassette: fast forward
- CD: CD track forward
- Autodial numbers (telephone memory): scroll down (names in alphabetical order Z → A). Holding this button down will cause the display to scroll quickly through the autodial numbers.

#### **B – Seek / Rewind**

- Radio: seek in reverse direction
- Cassette: fast rewind
- CD: CD track back
- Autodial numbers (telephone memory): scroll down (names in alphabetical order A → Z). Holding this button down will cause the display to scroll quickly through the autodial numbers.

#### **C – Radio / telephone button**

Pressing this button allows you to switch between the radio function (R) and the telephone function (T).

Depending on which mode is selected, the Driver Information System (DIS) will either display the radio data or the telephone data. The telephone data will suppress the radio data in the DIS display whenever the telephone is in use.

**D – Increase volume**

- Radio
- Cassette
- CD
- Hands-free operation (telephone)

depending on which unit is currently operating.

**E – Reduce volume**

- Radio
- Cassette
- CD
- Hands-free operation (telephone)

depending on which unit is currently operating.

**F – Telephone**

Press this button to:

- answer telephone calls using the speaker phone system,
- “send” a call, or
- finish a call that is already in progress.

**How the telephone works**

Operation of the Audi telephone is described in the operating manual, however please note the following information:

Defaults must be set once on the telephone. The “**Name Preference**” must be to **ON** – refer to the Audi Cellular Phone Operating manual.

If the telephone is replaced, the telephone book entries must be copied once from the telephone into the system.

This operation can be performed in the “Radio” operating mode. It takes a few minutes. If the “Telephone” mode is active, press the C button.

Once you have done this, any change in the telephone book made as a result of data entered at the telephone will automatically be updated in the system.

To begin copying telephone book data into the system, press buttons B and E simultaneously for at least 5 seconds.

During the transfer of data, the data set that is currently being transferred will appear in the DIS display.

The following status messages may appear in the DIS display:

- INCOMING CALL –  
an outside call is being received.
- PHONE IN USE –  
the telephone is currently connected to the cellular phone system.
- MEMORY EMPTY –  
memory is empty.
- SYSTEM BUSY –  
the cellular phone system is busy.
- PHONE OFF –  
the telephone is turned off.
- NO SERVICE –  
no connection to the cellular phone network.



### Changing the language setting

The default setting for displaying messages is ENGLISH. If you want to use a different language, proceed as follows:

- Language changes can only be made in the "Radio" mode. If you are in the "Telephone" mode, press the C button.

- Now, simultaneously press the C and F buttons for at least 5 seconds. The current language setting will appear in the DIS display (for example: ENGLISH).
- Use the A and B buttons to select the language you wish to use.
- Confirm the selection by pressing the F button.

## Mobile telephones and CB radios

**Mobile telephones or CB radios should not be used in the vehicle unless a separate outside antenna is installed.**

If you use a mobile telephone or CB radio inside the vehicle without an outside antenna, the high frequency energy (resonance effect) emitted inside the vehicle can cause malfunctions in the vehicle's electronic system.

Moreover the unit achieves maximum pick-up only if an outside antenna is installed.



### WARNING

**Using a mobile telephone or CB radio inside the vehicle without having a separate outside antenna could be dangerous to your health due to the high frequency energy emitted!**

In addition, an outside antenna can increase the reception range of your equipment.

### Note

**Always heed the instructions of mobile telephones and CB radios.**



### WARNING

**Always keep your attention on the road and traffic!**

## Carphone\*



The Audi is prepared for the installation of a mobile carphone<sup>1)</sup> in the center armrest. Please refer the carphone instruction manual on operating the mobile phone.

### Adjusting armrest

The armrest can be set to a number of different positions for greater comfort and to facilitate using the phone from the front or rear seats.

To adjust, press button (A) in the front of the armrest and pull the armrest all the way down. Then lift the armrest gradually until it engages in the required position.



### Opening phone cover

Open the cover in the armrest by pressing the release button (B). The phone is located under the cover.

### Taking phone out of armrest

Press button (C) to take the phone out of its holder.



The armrest should be swivelled towards the rear **when using the phone from the rear seats.**

To adjust, pull the armrest towards the rear until it has reached the required position – see illustration.

To move the armrest back into its original position, press the button in the front of the armrest (arrow A – left illustration) and push the armrest forwards as far as it will go.

<sup>1)</sup> The telephone in your vehicle may be different from the type shown in the above illustrations.

## Roof rack

If a roof rack or similar luggage carrying equipment is to be installed, please note the following:

- The vehicle is equipped with integrated roof railings, which can be covered into a roof rack by installing cross bars. Only install cross bars specifically designed for this vehicle.
- These bars are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments are necessary to safely transport luggage, bicycles, surf boards, skis or boats.
- All necessary hardware for these systems is available from your authorized Audi Dealer.

### Note

● **Any damage to the vehicle caused by using roof racks or other types of cross bars that have not been approved by Audi for your vehicle or incorrect roof rack installation is not covered by the Warranty.**



### WARNING

- **Use of an unapproved roof rack or incorrect mounting of an approved roof rack can cause the roof rack or the items carried on it to fall off the roof onto the road.**
- **Objects falling from the roof of a vehicle can cause an accident and personal injury.**
- **Only mount the system between the markings shown in the illustration.**
- **The roof rack system must be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.**



### Installing a roof rack

**The cross bars must be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.**

- The front and rear cross bars must be mounted between the punched markings on the inside of the roof railings (see illustration).
- Always distribute the loads evenly.



### Loading a roof rack

Always distribute the loads evenly.

**The total maximum permissible load carrying capacity of 200 lbs (100 kg) for the roof rack installation (including weight the roof rack system) must not be exceeded – see page 290 for details.**



### WARNING

- **Improper use of a roof rack can cause accidents and personal injuries.**
- **The use of a roof rack can negatively affect the way a vehicle handles.**
- **Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a greater negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.**
- **Never exceed the maximum permissible load carrying capacity of the roof of your vehicle.**
- **Always drive slowly, avoid sudden braking and maneuvers when transporting cargo on the roof of your vehicle.**

### When to remove the roof rack

If you have installed a roof rack on your vehicle, it is best to ask the car wash operator if it should be removed before going through an automatic car wash.

When not in use, remove the roof rack to reduce wind noise, improve handling, fuel consumption and guard against theft.

## The first 1,000 miles (1 500 km) – and afterwards


### Break-in period

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1 500 kilometres).

#### For the first 600 miles (1 000 kilometres):

As a rule of thumb:

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not drive faster than  $\frac{3}{4}$  of top speed shown on the speedometer.
- Avoid high engine speeds.
- If possible, avoid towing a trailer.


 <b>WARNING</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in." Be sure to remember this during the first 300 miles (500 kilometres). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.</b></li> <li>● <b>New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 100 to 150 miles (150 to 200 kilometres) of normal city driving. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed.</b></li> </ul>

#### From 600 to 1,000 miles (1 000 to 1 500 kilometres):

Speeds can gradually be increased to maximum permissible road or engine speed.

### During and after break-in period

- Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in **N** (Neutral) or in gear.

 **Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds – upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment – see also page 195.**

### After the break-in period

**Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.** Up-shift into the next higher gear before reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale – see page 117.

Excessive engine speeds are automatically reduced.

## Operate your vehicle safely

**The condition of the vehicle is essential for driving safety.**

Therefore, always be sure to observe the following points before you drive off:

- **Check lights and turn signals.**
- **Check fuel level.**
- **Adjust the mirrors.**
- **Make sure that all lights and all windows are clean.**
- **Make sure the air intake slot between the engine hood and the windshield is free of leaves, snow and ice.**
- **Check warning and indicator lights when starting the engine.**

For driving safety, always follow the specified maintenance intervals in your **Maintenance booklet** – especially for changing the brake fluid, see page 242.

**Your personal driving style and your attitude affect driving safety to a very great extent.**

Therefore, for your own safety:

● **Wear your safety belts and wear them properly, even if you're just driving in the city or to the corner store – see page 14.**

● **Make sure that all passengers are wearing their safety belts properly, even those sitting in the rear – see page 14.**

Passengers not wearing safety belts endanger not only themselves in case of an accident, but also the driver and other passengers.

● **Make sure that children always sit on the rear seat properly restrained by a restraint system appropriate for their size and age.**

● **Never transport a child in a rear-facing child or infant seat on the front passenger seat.**

● **Adjust your seat so that you can easily reach all controls as far away from the airbag as possible but no closer than 10 in. (25 cm) – see page 76.**

● **The seating position is very important for the airbag performance – see page 29.**

● **Always adjust the head restraints to the correct height.**

For maximum protection, the upper edge of the head restraints should be **at least** at eye level, or higher.

● **Always make sure that the movement of the pedals is not restricted in any way – see page 102.**

● **Store luggage and light items properly**

– **in the luggage compartment – see page 88.**

– **of the roof – see page 191.**

● **If you drink, do not drive.**

The use of alcohol, drugs and certain medications will seriously impair perception, reactions and driving ability, and substantially increase the risk of an accident and personal injury.

## Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution

- **Do not drive if you are tired.**

Make frequent rest stops, at least after every two hours of driving.

- **Always adapt vehicle speed to traffic, weather and road conditions.**

Remember that especially on smooth, slippery roads, vehicle handling and braking depend a great deal on tire adhesion. On wet roads, the front wheels can hydroplane especially at higher speeds. If this happens, you will then, no longer be able to steer or brake properly.

- **Always observe the posted speed limits and use common sense. Your good judgment can mean the difference between arriving safely at your destination and having an accident.**

Additional information regarding safety can be found in the individual chapters of this manual.

Various factors influence fuel consumption: engine wear, brakes and tires, environmental impact.

This chapter addresses some of these points.

**Your personal style of driving** will determine the economy of your vehicle, as well as exhaust and noise levels.

- ✿ ***Do not let your vehicle stand and warm up.***

When the engine is idling, it takes a very long time to warm up. Moreover, during warm-up, both engine wear and exhaust gas emissions are very high. Therefore, be ready to drive off immediately after starting the engine and avoid high engine speeds.

- ✿ ***Avoid full throttle.***

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption, engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

- ✿ ***Avoid driving at high speed.***

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permitting.

- ✿ ***Drive as smoothly as possible and keep a lookout ahead.***

Unnecessary accelerating and braking increase fuel consumption and disturb the environment.


- ✿ ***Switch off your engine if you are caught in a traffic jam. This saves fuel and reduces emissions.***

### The external conditions

in which you drive also affect your fuel consumption.

The following conditions increase fuel consumption:

- Heavy traffic, especially in large cities with many traffic lights.
- Stop-and-go driving, especially short distances so that the engine never warms up as it should.
- Driving in heavy, slow moving traffic in low gear so that the engine speed is relatively high when compared to the distance driven.

 **Plan your trips ahead of time. Organize your trips to include several errands and to avoid heavy traffic.**

Of course, there are some conditions that will affect fuel consumption that you can't control.


For example, fuel consumption increases in the winter or under difficult conditions (bad roads, towing a trailer, etc.).

### The technical requirements

for optimum fuel consumption and economy were "built" into your vehicle. Special attention was paid to the environment. To retain and make use of these characteristics, please note the following points:

 **Use only unleaded gasoline.**

Leaded gasoline causes damage to the catalytic converter and other components of the emission system.

 **Have your vehicle serviced by an Audi Dealer at the specified intervals – see page 228 and your Maintenance booklet.**

Having your vehicle regularly serviced by an Audi Dealer helps ensure that it runs properly and economically, that it does not disturb the environment, and that it has a long service life.



**Check your tire pressure once a month.**

Low tire pressure increases fuel consumption and tire wear, and impairs vehicle handling.



### WARNING

**Underinflation and overloading of tires can lead to tire failure. Sudden failure on the road could cause a serious or fatal accident. See page 253 for inflation information.**



**Do not carry unnecessary items in the luggage compartment.**

Particularly in city traffic where you must often accelerate, weight influences fuel consumption.

 **Remove supplementary roof rack components when not in use.**

At high road speeds, the increased air resistance caused by the cross bars also increases fuel consumption.

 **Switch off any electrical equipment when no longer needed.**

The more electricity you consume, the higher the fuel consumption.

 **Check your vehicle's fuel consumption regularly. Keep a written record or use the trip odometer.**

Check your fuel consumption each time you refuel. By doing this, you can discover any inconsistencies which could result in increased fuel consumption and have these checked before other problems appear.

● **Check your oil each time you fill your tank**

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5 000 kilometres) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

● **The published ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada consumption estimates may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.**

**The catalytic converter** is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

**The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine - see page 225.**

**The catalytic converter will be permanently damaged by:**

● **Exceeding the correct engine oil level - see page 236;**

● **Driving until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat;**

- Turning off the ignition while the vehicle is moving – see page 115 – or
- Other unusual operating conditions.

Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.

To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:

- Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Maintenance booklet.

Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

c Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.

- Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

### Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.



## WARNING

- Parking

Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.

- Undercoating

Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

## Driving on rough roads or rugged terrain

For off road use, your Audi allroad is equipped with a 4-level air suspension ride-height adjustment system, in addition to all wheel drive.

Your vehicle's ground clearance (ride height) can be adjusted to changing terrain conditions with the push of a button.

At the highest level setting (maximum clearing level), ground clearance is 8.2 inches (20.8 cm).

### Some general tips

**Never drive on terrain that is too demanding for the design of your vehicle or for your driving abilities. Never take any unnecessary chances!**

- Before you take your vehicle off-road, make certain that you know how to operate the ride height adjustment system – see page 153.

- Make sure that you adjust the ride height just before you travel on any rough sections of terrain.

- **Always adjust the vehicle's speed to the trail and terrain conditions.**

- Stow any luggage or other items in the luggage compartment and make certain that they are properly secured so that they do not shift.

- Never travel on any roads, trails or terrain on which motor vehicle travel is prohibited.

 **Always protect the environment. Respect our natural surroundings.**

- After traveling off-road, remember to remove any branches or other foreign objects caught in the grille, underbody or wheels. In particular, look for foreign objects (stones) caught in the tire treads. Check the vehicle for possible damage.

- Clean dirty windows, headlight and tail-light lenses and license plates.

- Check your brakes after traveling off-road especially after driving through water.

- If need be, clean the underbody, suspension parts, etc. (for example, in an underbody wash).

### Some driving tips

#### Unpaved roads and off-road

- Drive slowly on unfamiliar roads and terrain, and stay alert for unexpected hazards (for example, potholes, rocks and stumps).

- To avoid hanging up the vehicle and damaging the undercarriage on extremely uneven terrain, drive over large humps with the hump in the center of the vehicle. Instead, always drive over the hump with the vehicle wheels on one side of the vehicle positioned over the crown of the hump.



### Driving on slopes

- If you find that you cannot climb a grade, **never** try to turn. Back down the hill **in reverse gear**. If you don't, the vehicle may tip or roll over!
- To reduce the danger of rolling the vehicle, drive the vehicle as close as possible to the "fall line" (direction of maximum slope) – not at an angle to the fall line.

**If it feels like the vehicle is about to roll over when you are traveling at an angle to the fall line, turn into the fall line immediately.**

- **Never** park your vehicle on extreme uphill or downhill slopes.

### Deep snow

- You should promptly install wheels equipped with winter or all-season tires when you expect winter road conditions – see page 260.
- Install snow chains before attempting to drive through deep, unplowed snow – see page 261.

### Driving through water

- Always make certain that the ride level system is **in** the highest level before crossing streams and similar water obstacles.
- You should always determine how deep the water is before you drive through it.
- When crossing through water, travel only at a walking speed. If possible, **do not stop** and **do not shut off** the engine.
- Avoid driving through salt water (beaches, for example).

**After you have traveled through water, mud or slush, your brakes may be slow to respond due to wet brake rotors and pads. To get back the full braking effectiveness, apply the brakes cautiously to dry them out. The brakes must be dry before you can get full brake performance.**

### Sand, quicksand and similar unstable soils

Cross sandy or other unstable terrain briskly and, if possible, do not stop.

## Braking

### General notes

● The brakes on today's automobiles are still subject to wear, depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits. On vehicles which are driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or which are driven hard, the brake pads should be checked by your authorized Audi Dealer more often than specified in the **Maintenance booklet**.

● On steep slopes, you should use the braking effect of the engine. This way, you prevent unnecessary wear to the brake system. If you must use your brakes, do not hold the brakes down continuously. Pump the brakes at intervals.

● Under certain conditions, for example, when driving through water or very heavy rain, or even after washing your vehicle, the braking effect can be reduced due to the wet brake pads or pads which are iced-up in the winter. A few cautious brake applications should dry off the brake pads or remove ice coatings.

The effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced when the vehicle is driven on a salt-covered road and the brakes are not used. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few cautious brake applications.

### WARNING

● **If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed, otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.**

● **Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance.**

**Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest authorized Audi Dealer or qualified workshop.**

### Brake booster

#### WARNING

● **The brake booster works with vacuum pressure which is created only when the engine is running. Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.**

● **If the brake booster is not working, for example when towing your vehicle, or because the brake booster has somehow been damaged, the brake pedal must be pressed harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.**

### Functioning of Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS contributes effectively to vehicle control since it prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied. This means that the vehicle remains steerable and is less likely to skid.

#### Note

**You don't have to "pump" the brake. Just hold the brake pedal down.**

However, do not expect that the ABS shortens braking distance under all circumstances. When driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow on top of icy surfaces, braking distance may be even longer, therefore, under these circumstances, it is especially important that you drive slowly and with great care.

### How the ABS system works

An automatic check is made when a speed of about 4 mph (6 km/h) is reached. When this happens a pumping noise can be heard.

If an individual wheel begins to rotate too slowly in relation to vehicle speed and tends to lock, the ABS automatically reduces brake pressure to prevent that wheel from locking.

**This automatic adjustment process will cause a slight vibration of the brake pedal and some noises to alert you that vehicle speed must be adapted to existing road and traffic conditions.**

### Enhanced ABS function (Offroad-Mode)

To improve braking on loose terrain (for example: gravel, scree, mud, slush, snow), turn off the ESP (see page 205), which will switch the ABS to a special mode designed for off-road requirements.

In this mode, the ABS control system is changed to allow a "wedge" of loose rock or soil to form in the front of the wheels. This improves braking performance.

The ESP indicator light in the instrument cluster will come on when you have switched to this special ABS mode (see page 124).

This special ABS mode will remain active up to about 40 mph (60 km/h). ABS operation is not affected at speeds over 40 mph (60 km/h).

To turn his special ABS mode off, press the ESP button (To activate ESP, see page 152). The ABS off-road mode will also be deactivated when you turn off the engine.

** WARNING**

Although the ABS is very effective, always remember that braking capability is limited by tire traction.

Always adjust your driving speed according to the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the ABS tempt you into taking extra risks. The ABS cannot overcome the laws of physics.

If ABS is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on. See page 125 for additional details.

**Conditions affecting braking efficiency****Moisture or road salt**** WARNING**

- Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Cautiously apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few cautious brake applications.

** WARNING continued**

- Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few cautious brake applications.

**Overheating the brakes**** WARNING**

- Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.

** Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

 **WARNING continued**

● **Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving position. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.**

● **If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.**

● **Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance.**

**Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest Audi Dealer or qualified workshop.**

## Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL operates in conjunction with the ABS. The EDL acts automatically, i.e. without the driver's intervention.

With the aid of the ABS sensors, this system monitors the speed of the driven wheels up to about 50 mph, 80 km/h.

Within the speed range at which this system operates, if the wheels spin (e.g. on slippery surfaces) they are braked in a controlled manner, and more of the engine's power is directed to whichever wheels achieve greater traction.

**Please note:**

● When driving off, always be sure to keep road conditions in mind as you accelerate. If a drive wheel spins because it's on a slipperier surface, gradually increase the pressure on the accelerator pedal until the car starts to move.

● When accelerating on slippery surfaces, such as on ice or snow, always be careful when depressing the accelerator pedal. Even with the EDL working, the drive wheels can spin and reduce your ability to control your car.

● To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, if subjected to excessive loads the EDL cuts out temporarily. The vehicle remains operational and behaves in the same way as a vehicle without EDL.

If a fault occurs in the ABS the EDL is also not functioning. This is indicated by the ABS warning light – see page 125.

 **WARNING**

**The increased safety afforded by EDL does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.**

## Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

The Electronic Stability Program helps to control the vehicle in critical maneuvers like curves.

When the vehicle starts up and accelerates, the wheels are prevented from spinning by adjusting the engine power to conform to all road conditions. This improves vehicle stability.

The system operates across the entire speed range in combination with the ABS system. If the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) malfunctions, the ESP will also shut down.

When you turn on the engine, the ESP will automatically be activated and will perform a self-test.



The system can be activated or deactivated by pressing the button.

The warning light comes on when the system is switched off. See page 124.

If you deactivate the ESP, a special ABS mode designed mainly for all-road conditions will be activated – see page 202.

It may be advantageous to turn off the system in certain special cases when wheel slippage is desired such as:

- when driving on difficult terrain

- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface
- when trying to “rock” out the vehicle when it has become stuck.

After this, you should switch the system back on.

The ABS and EDS are still functioning even if the ESP is switched off.

### Operation

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) and the Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) are integrated in the Electronic Stability Program. In addition to the data provided by these functions, the ESP control unit requires additional measurement data provided by high-performance sensors. The rotational speed of the vehicle about its vertical axis, vehicle lateral acceleration, brake pressure and the steering angle are measured.

The direction in which the driver wishes to travel is determined with the aid of the steering angle and the vehicle speed and is continually compared with the actual behavior of the vehicle.

If the data do not match – for example when a vehicle is beginning to spin out of control – the ESP applies the brakes to the appropriate wheels for the given situation and, if necessary, changes the vehicle traction forces so as to reduce the slipping of individual wheels (ASR anti-slip regulation).

The vehicle is then stabilized by the forces acting on the wheel during braking. If the vehicle is oversteering (rear tends to skid out of the turn), the brakes are mainly applied on the wheel that is on the outside of the curve. In the case of a vehicle that is understeering (tendency to slide out of the curve), the brakes are applied at the rear wheel that is on the inside of the curve. An audible signal will accompany the brake application function.

All ESP sensors are monitored continuously while the vehicle is being driven. However, when the vehicle is driven at low speed on extremely rugged terrain, it is not always possible to monitor the ESP sensors continuously. Thus, in rare and exceptional cases, the ESP itself can deactivate (ESP and ABS indicator lights will be lit continuously).

In this case, the ride level adjustment system lowers the vehicle to the normal level. If this happens, you may need to select the ride level again (see page 153).

Operation of the ESP and ABS is restored whenever you restart the engine.



### WARNING

**The Electronic Stability Program is nevertheless subject to the laws of physics. It is particularly important to pay attention to this fact on wet and slippery roads.**

**It is therefore important that you always adapt your driving to the condition of the road and traffic conditions. Do not allow the increased safety provided by the Electronic Stability Program system to lull you into accepting additional safety risks.**

## Driving with your quattro®

The All Wheel Drive system has no operating controls that require attention.

The engine power is distributed automatically to all four wheels for optimum efficiency in all situations and road conditions.

The All Wheel Drive concept is perfectly matched to the engine power of your Audi allroad. This combination gives the vehicle exceptional handling and performance capabilities, both on normal roads and in extreme conditions of ice and snow.

However, it is vital to observe the following safety notes:



### WARNING

**Always adjust your driving to road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by All Wheel Drive tempt you into taking extra risks.**

**Although the All Wheel Drive is very effective, always remember that braking capacity is limited by tire traction. You should therefore not drive at excessive speeds on icy or slippery road surfaces.**



### WARNING continued

**On wet road surfaces, be careful not to drive too fast because the front wheels could begin to slide on top of the water (hydroplaning). If this should occur, you will have no warning from a sudden increase in engine speed as with a front-wheel drive vehicle. Always drive at speeds which are suitable to the road conditions.**

### Replacing wheels / tires

All four wheels must always have the same rolling radius. Different tires on the front and rear wheels may impair vehicle control and will damage the All Wheel Drive because of the constantly different wheel speeds. The proper function of the system is not affected by unevenly worn tires.

For more information, see page 255.

### Using winter tires

When driving in the winter, your vehicle with All Wheel Drive has an advantage, even with regular tires.

You should promptly install wheels equipped with winter or all-season tires to better handling and braking characteristics. See also "Winter tires", page 260.



### Trailer towing

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation. The additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reasons, always follow the operating and driving instructions given and use common sense.

### Technical requirements

#### Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and securely bolted to appropriate place on the vehicle's chassis. Use only a trailer hitch with removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

#### **Do not use a bumper hitch.**

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind.



#### **WARNING**

**When you are no longer towing a trailer, remove the entire trailer hitch. When doing so, seal all bolt holes to prevent water and deadly exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.**

#### **Engine cooling system**

Towing a trailer make the engine work harder. It is important that the engine cooling system be up to the job. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

### Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's brake system.

### Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and trailer.

### Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Do not connect the trailer light system directly to the light system of your vehicle. Be sure to check with your Audi Dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

### Mirrors


If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you must install extended mirrors. It's important that you always have clear vision to the rear.

### Operating instructions

#### Maximum trailer weight

A trailer for your vehicle is limited to a typical class 1 or class 2 trailer.

**Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer.**

 <b>WARNING</b>
<b>Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride without the restraints provided by Audi.</b>

### Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Adjust as necessary so that you can see the road ahead but not blind on-coming traffic.

Check proper working of vehicle and trailer lights.

### Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

### Driving instructions

To obtain the best possible handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- A “balanced” rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

- The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig.

**Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed.** Reduce your speed even more under unfavorable load, weather or wind conditions – particularly when going downhill.

Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.

Reduce vehicle speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.

Observe speed limits. In some areas speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

- Always apply brakes early.

When driving downhill, shift into lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

- **The coolant temperature gauge must be observed carefully. If the needle nears the upper end of the scale, reduce speed immediately and/or switch off the air conditioner.**

**If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing in red, pull off the road, stop and let the engine idle for about 2 minutes to prevent a heat build-up.**

## Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic until you learn the feel of your vehicle and trailer unit.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Steering while backing up is generally opposite of that when backing your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop.

To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

After parking, always block the wheels of both vehicle and trailer. Do not park with a trailer on a slope. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

- Apply foot brake.
- Have someone place chocks under both vehicle and trailer wheels.
- With chocks in place, slowly release brakes until wheel blocks absorb the load.
- Turn wheels to curb.
- Apply parking brake.
- Place automatic transmission in "P".

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to "P" before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may require more force later to move the lever out of the "P" position.

When restarting after parking on a slope, reverse the procedure:

- Start the engine.
- Shift transmission into gear.
- Release the parking brake and slowly move away from the wheel blocks.
- Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel blocks.

## Notes

- **Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.**
- If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load – see also page 228.

## Cleaning and protection

Any automobile is subjected to abuse from industrial fumes, corrosive road salt, abandoned lollipops, muddy dog feet, etc. A well cared-for Audi can look like new many years after purchase. Regular and correct care will contribute to maintaining the beauty and value of your Audi.

**Furthermore, good care may be a condition for upholding a warranty claim should corrosion damage or paint defects occur.**

Your Audi Dealer has a variety of vehicle-care products and can advise you which ones to use for cleaning the exterior and interior of your vehicle.

Whether you use products recommended by Audi or other commercially available cleaning agents, please make very sure you apply them correctly.



**Select only environmentally friendly cleaning products. Any remaining cleaning products do not belong in the household waste.**



### WARNING

- **Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Keep them out of the reach of children.**
- **Observe all caution labels.**
- **Always read directions on the container before using any product. Follow these directions carefully.**
- **Most chemical cleaners are concentrates which require dilution.**
- **Only use spot removing fluids in well ventilated areas.**
- **Do not use gasoline, kerosene, Diesel fuel, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways.**

## Care of exterior

### Important

**Never use polishes or hard waxes on matte-painted parts or plastic parts, since this can permanently damage the visual appearance of the surfaces of these parts.**

In particular, make certain that the roof, bumper, trim moldings, rocker panel molding and wheel house liners **do not** come in contact with cleaners / polishes or hard waxes.

## Washing

The best protection against environmental influences is frequent washing and waxing.

How often this is required depends on how much the vehicle is used, where it is parked (garage, in the open under trees, etc.), the seasonal and weather conditions as well as **environmental influences**. The longer bird droppings, insects, tree resin, road and industrial grime, tar, soot, road salt and other materials remain on the vehicle paint, the more lasting their destructive effect will be.

High temperatures, as from strong sunlight, intensify the corrosive effect.

Under certain circumstances, weekly washing may be necessary. Under other conditions, a monthly washing and waxing may be adequate.

After the winter, the underside of the vehicle should be thoroughly washed.

## Automatic car wash

The vehicle paint is so durable that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the facility, the filtering of the wash water, the type of wash and care material, etc. If the paint has a dull appearance after going through the car wash or is scratched, bring this to the attention of the operator immediately. If necessary use a different car wash.

### Notes

- Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows and sunroof\*.
- You don't have to remove the factory-installed radio antenna. However, if your vehicle is equipped with the Navigation System\*, then you must remove the antenna.
- If you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle – such as spoilers, roof rack, etc. – it is best to ask the car wash operator if these should be removed.

## Washing the vehicle by hand

 ***In the interest of the environment, the vehicle should only be washed in special wash bays.***

First soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, glove or brush starting on the roof and working down using only slight pressure. Special car wash soap should only be used for very persistent dirt.

Rinse the sponge or glove thoroughly and often.

Clean wheels and sill panels last, using a different sponge if possible.

After washing the vehicle, rinse thoroughly with water and wipe it off.

## Notes

- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- If the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders – otherwise they may freeze up in the winter.

### **WARNING**

- **Do not wash, wax or dry the vehicle with the engine running.**
- **Do not clean the underside of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash.**

## Washing your vehicle with a power washer

If you use a power washer, please note the following:

- Always follow the operating instructions for the power washer – especially for pressure and spraying distance.
- Make sure that the jet on the spray hose produces a “fan shape” spray. Do not use a jet which sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a rotating jet.
- Water temperature should not exceed 140 °F (60 °C).

### **WARNING**

**Never wash tires with a jet that sprays the water out in a direct stream. This could invisibly damage and weaken the tires, even if they are sprayed from a relatively long distance for a very short amount of time. Damaged and weakened tires can fail and cause accidents and personal injury.**

## Headlights

Do not clean your headlights with a dry towel or sponge. They must be cleaned with a moistened towel.

Never use a sponge designed for removing dried-on insects, a kitchen scrubber or any other similar product since the lens surface can be damaged by scratching and scouring.

When using high-pressure washing equipment or steam-cleaning units, never spray the vehicle with the nozzle close the vehicle surface and never aim the spray at the same point for a relatively long period of time.

## Polishing

Please refer to the important information on page 212.

Polish your vehicle only if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax. If the polish used doesn't contain preservative compounds, the paint must be waxed afterwards.

**Do not treat matte-painted and plastic parts with polish or wax.**

## Waxing

Please refer to the important information on page 212.

- A good wax coating protects the vehicle paint to a large extent against the environmental influences listed under "Washing" and even against light scratches.
- When water doesn't form small drops and roll off clean paint, apply a coat of good hard wax. Even if a wax solution is used regularly for washing your vehicle, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.
- To protect bright metal trim, use car wax.
- Protect plastic body parts painted the same as the vehicle body with car wax.
- Do not use car wax on ...
  - matte or anodized metal trim
  - rubber or rubber-like trim.

## Trim strips

Dirty patches and marks on the trim strips should be removed with a **pH-balanced** cleaning agent (do not use a chrome cleaner). Audi Dealers carry cleaning products which have been tested for use on your vehicle and are not harmful to the environment.

To avoid corrosion on the exterior trim strips, only a pH-balanced solution should be used for the windshield washer.

## Touch-up paint

Your Audi Dealer has touch-up paint for minor scratches and stone chips. Scratches should be touched up soon after they occur to prevent corrosion.

If a spot starts to rust, however, a simple touch-up job won't be enough. The affected surface must be smoothed with sand paper and covered with an anti-rust primer before the painted finish can be restored.

The number for the original vehicle paint can be found on the vehicle identification label – see page 291.

## Windows

Clean all windows regularly to remove road film and car-wash wax buildup. Use a luke-warm soap and water solution or an alcohol-based commercial window cleaning agent. If a chamois is used for polishing the glass, it should be used exclusively for that purpose.

Also, be sure to clean all windows regularly on the inside.

Use a plastic scraper to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. To help prevent dirt from scratching the window, always scrape in a forward direction – pushing the scraper away from you – never back and forth.

### Note

To prevent damage the **wires of the rear defogger**, do not place any adhesive stickers in the inside of the rear window over the wires.



### Weatherstrips

**Keep silicone sprays off the windshield to avoid wiper smear in rain.**

To seal properly, weatherstrips around hood, rear lid, doors, etc., must be pliable. Spray with silicone or coat with talcum powder or glycerine to retain flexibility of the rubber and to protect against freezing in the winter.

### Dull finishes and plastics

Plastic parts, such as light bulb lenses, decorative stripes, panels, bumpers, etc., will come clean with regular washing. Should additional cleaning or spot removal be necessary, use a soft brush or cloth soaked with a mild detergent solution. Then rinse thoroughly and immediately with clear water.

**Do not use anything which could mar the plastic or dull finished surfaces, such as wax, polish, abrasive detergents or chemical cleaning solvents.**

### Bright metal trim

Bright or black anodized metal trim will come clean with regular washing. Remove spots or dirt from chrome and stainless steel with a chrome cleaner. Apply a chrome polish for continued luster and protection.

### Steel wheels

Always include the hub caps and wheel rims when washing your vehicle to remove road dirt, salt sprays and brake dust. If necessary, use a commercial wheel cleaner to remove accumulated brake dust. Paint scratches should be touched up as soon as possible to prevent corrosion.

### Light alloy wheels

To preserve the decorative appearance of the light alloy wheels, some special care is necessary. In addition to road dirt and salt sprays, brake dust is also corrosive. If left on too long, brake dust can cause pitting. Wash the wheels with a sponge or hose brush every other week.

Road salt should be removed weekly with an acid free cleaning solution. Every three months (after regular cleaning) coat the wheels with petroleum jelly or car wax. Rub it in firmly with a soft cloth. Never use abrasive or metal polishing cleaning agents.



### WARNING

**Moisture, ice, and road salt on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each washing. Always heed WARNING on page 203.**

## Care of interior

### Glass

Use the same cleaning agents as for exterior glass surfaces and polish dry.

### Fabric

Use a vacuum cleaner or a soft bristle brush to remove dust and loose dirt from carpeting, upholstery, headliner and other trim. Dirt stains can usually be removed with a lukewarm soapy water or all-purpose cleaner solution, or a dry foam cleaner.

For greasy, oily and other stubborn stains, use a spot remover. Do not pour the liquid on the fabric. Dampen a clean cloth and rub carefully, starting at the edge and working inward.

### Plastic and vinyl

Use a clean, damp cloth or sponge to remove dust. For other soil, use a lukewarm all-purpose cleaning solution or a mild saddle soap for vinyl trim. Remove water spots and soap traces with a clean, damp cloth or sponge. Use a clean, soft cloth to rub dry.

Grease, tar or oil stains can be removed with a clean cloth or sponge soaked with all-purpose cleaner or with a solvent type vinyl cleaning agent.

Occasionally apply a colorless vinyl or leather preservative to retain the material's luster and pliability.

### Aluminum trim

Use only **neutral-pH** products to remove spots and deposits from aluminum surfaces. Chrome care products and alkaline cleaners will attack aluminum surfaces and can damage them over time.

### Cleaning and care of leather upholstery

Audi does everything possible to preserve the special qualities of natural leather upholstery. When treating the hides, care is taken to avoid all processes which could impair the natural advantages of the material which make for extra comfort.

Because of the exclusive nature of the hides selected and the natural properties of the leather, this kind of upholstery requires a certain amount of care in everyday use since the leather is sensitive to materials such as oil, grease and dirt or wet clothing. If it is given regular attention, the leather upholstery will retain its high quality for many years.

Dust and small particles of dirt lodging in the pores, grain and seams can have an abrasive effect and damage the surface and the seams. If the vehicle is left standing for a long time in the sun, cover the upholstery or use the sun blinds to protect the leather from direct sunlight and prevent fading or discoloration.

Depending on the amount of use, clean it occasionally according to the following instructions. **Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar materials.**

For normal cleaning of leather-covered steering wheels, leather seat upholstery, etc., slightly moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the areas affected.

More stubborn dirt can be removed using a mild soap solution (pure liquid soap: two tablespoons dissolved in 1 quart of water). **It is very important not to let the water soak through the leather or penetrate into the seams.** Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

In addition to this regular cleaning, it is worthwhile treating the leather with a suitable leather-care product. This should be done about twice a year for upholstery in normal use. Apply these products very sparingly and follow the manufacturer's directions.

### Safety belts

**Keep belts clean! Dirty belts may not retract properly.**

For cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. Let belts dry thoroughly and away from direct sunlight.

Do not allow inertia reel safety belts to retract before they are completely dry.



### WARNING

- **Anything that might damage your safety belts could mean that you and your passengers would not be adequately protected in an accident.**
- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents, bleach or dyes. They have corrosive properties which weaken the webbing.**
- **When cleaning your safety belts, inspect them for damage. If you discover damage, see your Audi Dealer.**
- **Safety belt performance depends on correct installation. Never remove belts from the vehicle to clean them.**

**Engine compartment**** WARNING**

- **Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to read the information on page 232.**
- **Before reaching into the front plenum panel, always remove the ignition key. Otherwise, the windshield wiper system could unintentionally be switched on, possibly causing personal injury from the moving wiper linkage.**
- **Do not wash, wax or dry the engine with the engine running. Moving or hot parts could injure you.**

** WARNING continued**

- **Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash.**

The engine compartment and transmission have been corrosion protected at the factory.

Remove leaves from the plenum panel in front of the windshield under the engine hood. This prevents the water drain holes from becoming blocked, and it prevents debris from entering the vehicle interior through the heating and ventilation ducts.

Good anti-corrosion treatment is very important, particularly in the winter. If the vehicle is frequently driven on salted roads, the entire engine compartment and plenum panel should be thoroughly cleaned at the end of winter and retreated to prevent salt damage. At the same time, the underside of the vehicle should be washed as well.

** WARNING**

**Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan can switch on suddenly and injure you.**

**Always switch off the ignition before cleaning the engine.**

If the engine compartment is cleaned at any time with grease removing solutions<sup>1)</sup>, or if you have the engine washed, the anti-corrosion treatment is almost always removed as well. It is therefore essential to ask for a long-lasting corrosion protection of all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment.

***✿ If you must rinse off gasoline, oil residue or grease while you are washing your engine, then the dirty water should be run through an oil separator filter. We recommend that you have your engine washed at a qualified workshop or service station.***

<sup>1)</sup> Use only the correct cleaning solutions. Never use gasoline or Diesel.

### Chassis

The lower body shell of your Audi is also thoroughly protected against corrosion. Any damage to the undercoating caused by road hazards should be repaired promptly.



#### WARNING

**Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.**

### Body cavity sealing

All body cavities which could be affected by corrosion have been given thorough protection at the factory.

This sealing does not require any inspection or additional treatments. If any wax should seep out of the cavity when the ambient temperature is high, it can be removed with a plastic scraper and a suitable solvent.


***✿ If you use benzine for removing the wax, keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away. Never dump benzine on the ground, into open streams or down sewage drains.***

***Be sure to observe all safety and environmental regulations.***

## General notes

- We recommend that you have the engine compartment and the underside of your vehicle inspected twice a year for any damage to the protective coating, preferably before and after the winter season. Have necessary repairs done as soon as possible.
- Also, whenever the lower body shell, axle, transmission or engine assemblies have been repaired, any anti-corrosion coating lost on the affected surfaces should be reapplied.
- Oil-based protective sprays must not be applied. Only tar- or wax-based anti-corrosion protectors are compatible with the factory applied corrosion protection. Before application, road dirt, salt spray deposits and oily substances must be removed.

Your authorized Audi Dealer stocks the cleaning and preservation solutions recommended by the factory for this purpose and has the equipment necessary to apply them. Therefore, any additional corrosion protection work should be performed by an Audi Dealer. Using incorrect cleaning solutions could damage rubber parts or painted surfaces.

	<b>WARNING</b>
<b>Use only the correct cleaning solutions. Never use gasoline, Diesel fuel or solvents which could cause a fire.</b>	

## Fuel tank



The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

The central locking system automatically locks and unlocks the fuel filler flap. If the central locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually – see page 224 for further details.

Open the flap as illustrated above.

The capacity of the tank is:  
approx. 18.5 US gallons (70 liters).



When refueling, hang the fuel tank cap on the fuel filler flap as illustrated above.

### Notes

- **Don't drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. Gasoline could get in the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.**
- **If any fuel has spilled onto the car, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage the paintwork.**



### WARNING

**Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852-86).**

## Refuelling the vehicle

Your vehicle fuel tank has an on-board refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle.


In order to fill your tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully:

- **Turn off the engine.**
  - Remove the fuel filler cap by turning it slowly counter clockwise allowing fuel pressure to dissipate.
  - Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.
- Select a medium refuelling rate, when filling your tank.

### **WARNING**

**Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and / or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the car's filler neck could cause fuel overflow and fuel spray which can cause fire or serious injury.**

- Stop refueling when the fuel pump shuts off automatically – do not add more fuel or “top off”.

 ***As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel, because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled – causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.***

- After filling your tank, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until you hear a definite click. To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel filler cap properly and completely.

### Notes

- If you cannot fully insert the pump nozzle, use another fuel pump or change gas stations.
- Do not refuel your vehicle with the ignition switched on. The fuel gauge may otherwise not indicate the exact fuel level after refuelling.



## Filling a portable fuel container in exceptional cases

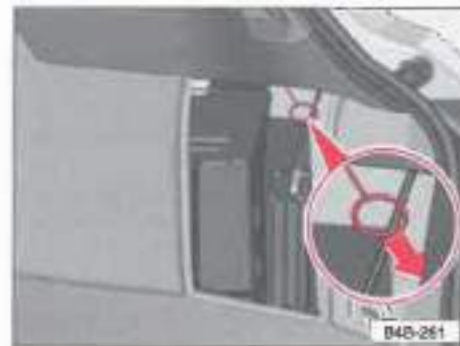
### **⚠ WARNING**

To reduce the risk of fire and personal injury when filling a fuel container for a lawn mower or snow blower, etc. please remember:

- Never fill a portable fuel container leaving it still in the luggage compartment or on top of the car. Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.

### **⚠ WARNING continued**

- Never spill fuel inside the luggage compartment or vehicle interior. Fuel vapors are highly flammable and can cause fire and serious burns.
- Always observe local and state (provincial) laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of such containers.
- Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852-86).



### **Emergency unlocking of the fuel filler flap**

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually:

- Open the rear lid.
- Remove cover from the right-hand trim panel.
- To release the fuel filler flap, pull the actuator in the direction of arrow (see illustration).
- Open the fuel filler flap.

## Fuel supply

 **Use only unleaded fuel in your vehicle.**

### Fuel Recommendation

**The fuel recommended for your vehicle is unleaded premium grade gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI<sup>1)</sup> / 95 RON or higher.**

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI / 91 RON. However, using 87 AKI / 91 RON octane fuel will lead to a certain loss of engine power.

### Notes

● **Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.**

● **Do not use leaded gasoline!**

**The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.**

Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

### Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by pre-ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasolines most commonly used in the United States and Canada have the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

Premium Grade: 91 – 96 AKI

Regular Grade: 87 – 90 AKI

### Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex =  
(R+M) / 2 = (RON+MON) / 2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

<sup>1)</sup> = (R+M) / 2

## **Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)**

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

### **Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)**

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% CO-solvents.

## **Note**

**Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.**

### **Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)**

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must not contain more than 10% ethanol.

### **Blend of gasoline and MTBE**

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

## **Notes**

- **Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.**
- **If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.**
- **Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.**
- **Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.**
- **If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.**

**Seasonally adjusted gasoline**

Many gasolines are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

**Gasoline additives**

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasolines differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasolines contain properties that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine components, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, built-up carbon deposits can rob your engine of peak performance.


**Note**

**Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

## Maintenance

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum.

However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability.

 ***By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.***

For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Maintenance booklet.

**Under difficult operating conditions**, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified.

This applies particularly to:

- oil changes, and
- cleaning or replacing the air filter.

### Important considerations for you and your vehicle:

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi Dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop.

We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi Dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

### **Performing limited maintenance yourself**

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

### **WARNING**

- **Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.**
- **Be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Follow commonly accepted safety practices and good judgment. Never risk personal injury.**
- **Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed. Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi Dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.**

### **WARNING continued**

- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.**
- **Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.**
- **Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.**




**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

** WARNING continued**

● If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started. Always remove the ignition key before anyone gets under the vehicle.

Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in "P" (Park position) and the hand brake is firmly applied.

● Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.

 ***Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.***

***Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.***

## Engine hood



**To unlock** the engine hood, pull the release lever on the left under the dashboard. The hood pops up slightly under spring pressure.

### Note

**Before opening the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wipers are folded flat against the windshield. Otherwise, they could damage the paint on the hood.**



**To open**, pull the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow. This will release the hook under the hood.

Open the hood all the way. It will be held up by gas pressure in the strut.

### To close

Pull the hood down until the pressure from the strut is reduced. Then let the hood fall and latch in place – **you do not need to press the hood down again.**

### WARNING

- **A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving. When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.**

- **If you ever notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**



## Engine compartment

### WARNING

To help avoid injury, before you check anything under the hood:

- Switch off the engine. Remove the ignition key.
- Set the parking brake fully. Move the selector lever to P (Park).
- Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan can switch on suddenly and injure you.


### WARNING continued

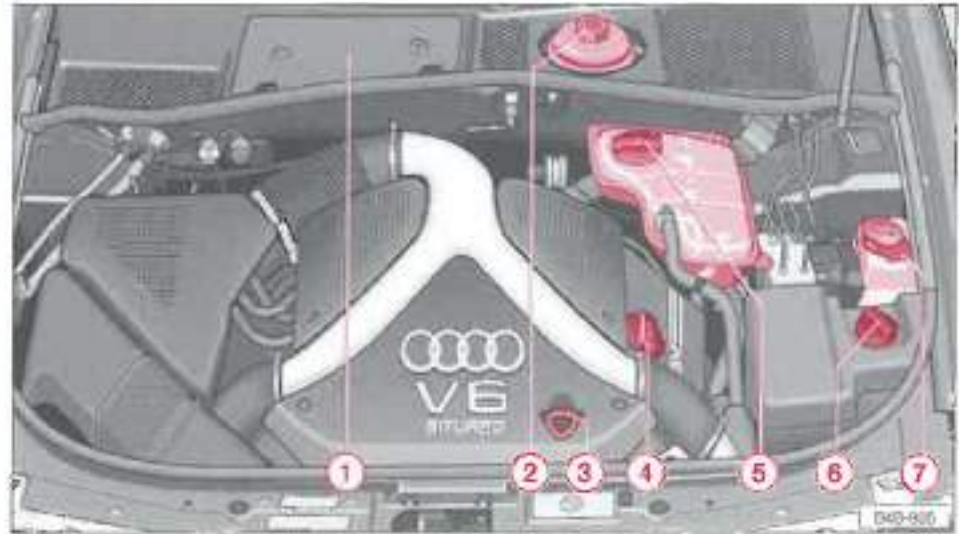
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Always disconnect the battery.
  - Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.
  - Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:
  - Ignition cables
  - Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.

### WARNING continued

- If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:
  - First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever to P (Park).
  - Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and wear no clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.

When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

 **To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Audi Dealer.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

**Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood.**

Pos.	see page
1 - Battery	244
2 - Brake fluid reservoir	242
3 - Engine oil dipstick	235
4 - Engine oil filler cap	235
5 - Coolant expansion tank	239
6 - Power steering reservoir	241
7 - Windshield/headlight washer container	250

## Engine oil

### Specification and viscosity

Your engine was factory filled with an all season high quality engine oil. If you need to add oil between oil changes, use any high quality petroleum- or synthetic-based oil with correct specifications.

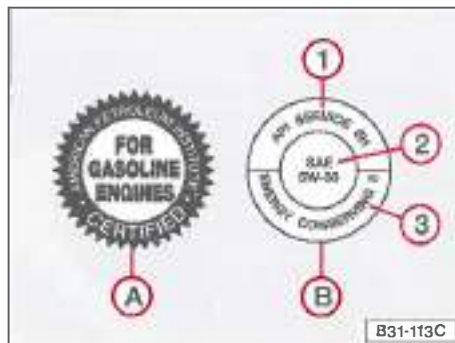
The following terms must appear on the oil container singly or in combination with other designations:

- API Service SJ
- ACEA A2 or ACEA A3

Engine oils are graded according to their viscosity. The proper grade to be used in your engine depends on existing climatic or seasonal conditions.

The engine oil which was first put into your engine has a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30. You can use this oil over all temperature ranges for normal driving. If engine oil viscosity grade SAE 0W-30 is not available, you can also use SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.

See your authorized Audi Dealer for more information regarding oil for your vehicle.



### Engine oil identification symbol

Oils of the proper quality for your vehicle will be identified with a new "starburst" symbol **A**. The starburst symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Another oil identification symbol **B** could be added to the oil container to help you select the correct oil.

- 1 - The top portion indicates the oil quality by API designations.
- 2 - The center portion shows the SAE oil viscosity grade.
- 3 - The lower portion indicates that the oil has fuel saving capabilities.

### Note

**Look for one of these symbols on the front of the oil container, and use only oils that display these symbols.**

### Engine oil additives

**Audi does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.**

## Engine oil consumption

The rate of the oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of oil, the speed at which the engine is operated, the climate, and road conditions as well as amount of dilution and oxidation of the lubricant.

Because of these variables, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established, but drivers should expect higher oil consumption at high speeds and when the engine is new.

Therefore, we recommend that you check the oil level at regular intervals (for example, each time you are refuelling, or before going on a long trip).

If the oil level should go below the minimal level, the **check engine oil level warning light\*** in the instrument cluster will come on. See page 144. You should check the oil level using the oil dip stick as soon as possible, and then top off the oil as necessary.

### Notes

- **The engine in your vehicle depends on oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts. Therefore the engine oil should be checked regularly and kept at the required level.**
- **Lack of sufficient engine oil may lead to severe engine damage.**
- **The oil pressure warning light is not an oil level indicator.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Checking the engine oil level

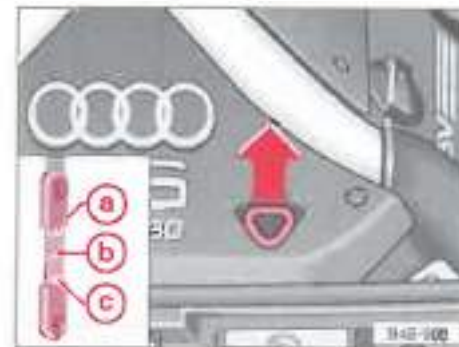
The best time to check the engine oil level is when the oil is warm.

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground.



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

- After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.



- Pull out dipstick (arrow) and wipe it clean with a rag.
- Reinsert dipstick; push it all the way in.
- Pull dipstick out again and read the level:
  - a** – You **must not** add oil.
  - b** – You **can** add oil. The oil level may go into the **a** range, but not above the **a** range
  - c** – You **must** add oil.  
After filling in oil, make sure that the oil level is somewhere within the **b** range.
- After checking the oil level, please make sure that the dipstick is pushed back in all the way.



## Adding engine oil



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

- Turn off the engine.
- Unscrew the oil cap from the cylinder head cover.
- Add oil by a half quart (half liter) at a time.
- Check the oil level with the dipstick.

**The oil level must never be above the “a” range.**

Otherwise oil could be drawn into the crankcase breather and get into the atmosphere through the exhaust system. **The oil would burn then in the catalytic converter and cause damage.**



### WARNING

**Spilled oil is a fire hazard. The oil filler cap must be secure to avoid an oil spill.**

- Carefully screw the oil cap back on and insert the oil dipstick all the way. Otherwise oil could leak out when the engine is running.

## Changing the engine oil

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Maintenance booklet.

This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

**⚠ WARNING**

- If you must change the engine oil in your vehicle:
- Wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil let the engine cool down to the touch.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

**✿ Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the old oil.**

***Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.***

***Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.***

***Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop.***



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Engine cooling system

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of water and the manufacturer's coolant additive **G 12 A8D** –antifreeze on a glycol base with anti-corrosion additives (50% for USA models; 60% for Canadian models). This mixture assures the necessary frost protection and protects alloy components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

–31 °F (–35 °C) USA

–40 °F (–40 °C) Canada.



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

**Never use any coolant additive other than our G12 A8D additive (check label) for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi Dealers.**

**Other types of antifreeze can, above all, significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and therefore serious engine damage.**

**When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, please remember:**

**Under no circumstances may G12 A8D be mixed with other coolant additives (for example G 11).**

**You can recognize G12 A8D in the expansion tank by its red color. If the liquid in the expansion tank is brown, G 12 A8D has been mixed with another coolant additive. In this case, your vehicle's coolant must be changed as soon as possible.**

### Note

**Mixing coolant additives can result in serious malfunction or engine damage!**

## Checking the engine coolant level

The coolant expansion tank is located on the left of the engine compartment – see illustration.

The coolant level is automatically monitored by the Auto-Check System – see page 141. However, it is still recommended to check the coolant level visually from time to time and always before going on a longer trip.

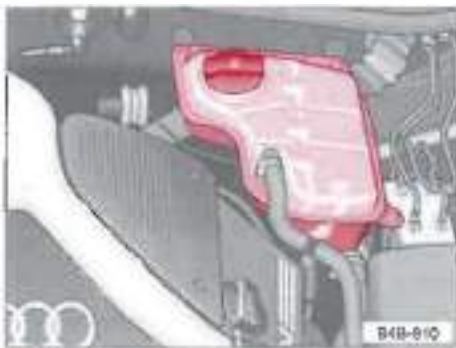


### WARNING

**To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood and following the precautions on the next page.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**



To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

Since the expansion tank is transparent, the cap need not be removed to check the coolant level.

The coolant level must be between the "**MIN**" and "**MAX**" marks when the engine is cold and can be slightly above the "**MAX**" mark if the engine is warm.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level checking device.

**When the coolant level is too low, the warning light (see page 141) in the Auto-Check System will blink until you add coolant and the coolant level has been restored to normal.**

## Coolant losses

Coolant losses may indicate a leak in the cooling system. In the event of coolant losses, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized Audi Dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a sealed system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating.



## Adding coolant

### WARNING

**The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.**

- Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
- Protect face, hands and arms escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
- To help avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze (see page 238) must be restored as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

**Do not fill coolant above the "MAX" mark.**


#### Note

**Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.**

**Screw cap on again tightly.**

### WARNING

**Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store antifreeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children. If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked "poison."**

 *Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant observing all environmental regulations.*



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Radiator fan

The radiator fan is driven by the engine via the V-belt. The viscous clutch regulates the speed of the fan according to the temperature of the coolant.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operation conditions.



### WARNING

● **Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the engine driven radiator fan, V-belt or other moving parts.**

● **Never touch the auxiliary electric radiator fan. The fan can switch on suddenly and injure you.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Power steering

Your vehicle is equipped with a **Servotronic power steering**. The degree of power assistance is regulated electronically according to road speed.

The fluid reservoir is in the engine compartment near the windshield washer container.

The correct fluid level in the reservoir is important for the proper functioning of power steering.

The power steering fluid level is checked during the scheduled Maintenance services.

If the electronic regulating system is not working properly, this is most noticeable when turning the steering wheel at low speeds (for example when parking) – more effort will be required than usual. The fault should be rectified by an Audi Dealer as soon as possible.

### Note

● When the engine is running, never hold the steering wheel turned all the way to the right or to the left for longer than 15 seconds. The power steering pump will overheat the hydraulic fluid if you hold the steering wheel all the way turned.

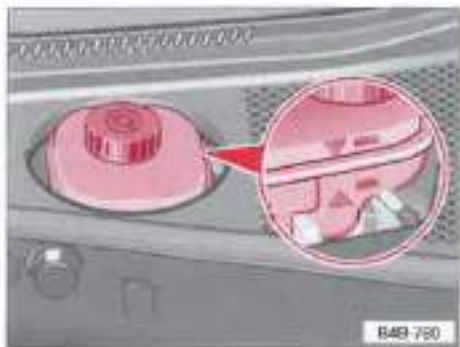
**This will damage the power steering system.**

Each time the steering wheel is turned all the way to the right or left when stopped, you will hear noises caused by the severe stress placed on the power steering pump. At the same time, engine idle speed drops.

● **If the power steering system should fail, or if the engine is not running (for example, while being towed), you will still be able to steer the vehicle, however, more effort will be required.**

● If the power steering system should have a leak, or is not functioning properly, contact your authorized Audi Dealer immediately.

## Brake fluid



The brake fluid reservoir is located on the left of the plenum chamber at the back of the engine compartment.

### Checking brake fluid level

The correct fluid level is important for the proper functioning of the brake system. The fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir should always be between the **"MAX"** and **"MIN"** markings.

The fluid level may drop slightly after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is no cause for alarm.

**STOP** **If the brake fluid level falls considerably below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning light will come on. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi Dealer or another qualified workshop and the cause corrected.**

The brake warning lamp lights up to indicate a low fluid level in the reservoir.

For more details see "Warning / Indicator lights," page 126.

**Contact an authorized Audi Dealer immediately.**

### Changing brake fluid


**The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi Dealer. Your dealer has the correct tools and know-how to do this for you.**

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed every 2 years.

#### Note

Remember that brake fluid is harmful to the paint of your vehicle.

 *Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid along with the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have your brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi Dealer.*

It is advisable to have the fluid changed during a Maintenance Service.



#### WARNING

**Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:**

- **Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi Dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also found labeled on the brake fluid reservoir.**
- **The brake fluid must be new.**
- **Brake fluid is poisonous. Therefore, it must be stored only in the closed original container out of reach of children.**

## Battery

### **WARNING**

Always heed the following **WARNINGS** and safety precautions when working on the battery.



**Shield eyes.** Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.



**No**  
- sparks  
- flames  
- smoking.



**Sulfuric acid.**  
Can cause blindness or severe burns. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



**Flush eyes immediately with water.**  
Get medical help fast.



**Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.**



**Always wear eye protection.** Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing.



**When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**



**Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light. Do not smoke. Do not reverse polarity.**



**Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.**  
Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings. If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor. If you should ingest any battery acid, get a doctor immediately.

- Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.
- When working on the battery, be sure not to short circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.

**Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running. Otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.**

**When working on the engine, protect the battery housing from ultra violet (UV) rays by not parking the vehicle in direct sunlight.**

### **Winter operation**

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. More power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your authorized Audi Dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems but will also last longer.

**If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged.**



### **Location of vehicle battery**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

The vehicle battery is located under a cover in the plenum chamber at the back of the engine compartment. To remove the cover, press the straps (arrows), swing up and remove.

## Battery acid level



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance.

At high outside temperatures it is advisable, however, to check the fluid level at regular intervals through the transparent battery housing. Also check the fluid level each time you charge the battery.

The fluid level should always be between the "**min**" and "**max**" marks in each cell.

If the fluid level has reached the "**min**" marks, let your authorized Audi Dealer correct the condition.



### WARNING

- **Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.**
- **Do not let battery acid come in contact with skin, eyes, fabric, or painted surfaces.**



### WARNING continued

- **If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor.**
- **Do not expose the battery to an open flame or electric spark. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery can explode and cause personal injury.**

#### Note

**Do not overfill the battery. Otherwise battery acid will overflow through the vent opening. This will damage the paint and cause corrosion.**



### WARNING

**Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**

## Charging of battery



### WARNING

- **The battery contains sulfuric acid. Therefore, keep battery out of reach of children.**
- **Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.**
- **Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.**
- **If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor.**
- **Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent mechanic with the proper equipment.**

**⚠ WARNING continued**

- **Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.**
- **Do not reuse batteries which have frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.**

**⚠ Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

- **Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.**
- **Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger.**

**Slow battery charging****⚠ WARNING**

**Heed all WARNINGS and follow instructions that come with your battery charger.**

- Before charging the battery, switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
- It is not necessary to remove the battery from the engine compartment, and it is also not necessary to disconnect the cables.
- **Make sure the electrolyte level in each cell is between the "min" and "max" marks. If the fluid level is below the "min" mark, let your authorized Audi Dealer correct the condition.**

- Connect charger cables.

**Charger cables must be connected POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) and NEGATIVE (-) to NEGATIVE (-).**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.**

- Switch on charger.
- **Charging rate not over 6 amps.**

Normally, a battery should be charged at no more than 10 percent of its rated capacity. For example, a charging current of 4.5 amps would be used on a battery rated at 45 Ah. Rated capacity of the battery in your vehicle is listed on the battery housing.

- After charging, first turn off the charger and then disconnect charger cables.

**⚠ Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**



## When disconnecting and connecting the battery ...

When you **disconnect** the vehicle battery please note the following:

- some data stored in the driver information system are erased,
- the clock goes out,
- the factory installed radio locks up,
- the Engine management system,
- the one-touch-up and one-touch-down functions of the power windows no longer work,
- all stored seat positions in the memory\* are erased.

After you **reconnect** the battery, you must reset the clock. → **page 118.**

You also have to reset the Engine management system – see “Starter Switch” → **page 113.**

You also have to reset the one-touch-up and one-touch-down feature on power windows – see “Power windows” → **page 71.**


You have also reset the seat memory\* – see “Seats” → **page 81.**

The radio must be re-coded with the correct radio code – see your radio Operating Instructions.

## Replacement battery

A replacement battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off.

 **Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi Dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly observing all environmental regulations.**

## Air cleaner

A dirty air cleaner element not only reduces the engine output and increases fuel consumption considerably but can also cause premature engine wear.

Normally, it is not necessary to service the air cleaner more often than recommended in the Maintenance booklet. If the vehicle is driven on very dusty roads, the air cleaner must be serviced more frequently, even daily.

**If your air cleaner element must be changed more frequently, we recommend that you have the air cleaner serviced by your authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop.**

**The air cleaner element must never be cleaned or soaked with gasoline, cleaning solvents or oil.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Spark plugs

Spark plugs are replaced during the Audi scheduled Maintenance Service.

If you have to replace the spark plugs between the Audi Maintenance services, be sure to note the following:

- Engine, spark plugs and the ignition system are matched to each other. To avoid faulty operation or engine damage, use only Original Audi spark plugs. It is especially important to note the number of electrodes on the spark plug and the heat value.
- Since spark plug specifications may change for technical reasons during a model year, we recommend that you obtain your spark plugs from an authorized Audi Dealer, who has the latest information.



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Belts

### Ribbed V-Belt

The radiator fan, hydraulic pump (power steering), alternator and air conditioner compressor are driven by one V-belt.

The installed V-belt conforms to the highest quality requirements. The V-belt adjusts its own tension.

**Replacing of the V-belt should be performed by your authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop.**

When replacing a belt, it is not sufficient to use just any belt of the same size. For safe and reliable operation, use only Genuine Audi V-belts specially designed for your vehicle. The correct belts can be obtained at your authorized Audi Dealer.



### WARNING

**To prevent serious personal injuries stay well clear of the V-belt. The radiator fan and the V-belt driven accessories when the engine is running. The V-belt will be inspected and replaced by your authorized Audi Dealer during a scheduled Maintenance Service.**

### Timing belt

- Your engine is equipped with a long lasting **toothed belt**. The belt will be inspected and replaced during a scheduled Maintenance Service.



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Windshield / headlight washer container



The windshield and headlight washer container is located on the left side of the engine compartment.

The fluid container for the windshield washers and the headlight washer system holds about 4.9 quarts (4.7 liters).



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

### Filling the container

To add washer fluid, just lift the filler cap by the tongue. The container can be filled to the top.

Since clear water is usually not adequate for cleaning the glass, add a cleaning solution to the water.

Use winterized windshield washer solvent during the cold season even though the vehicle is equipped with **heated washer jets**. It helps to keep your windshield clean and prevents the fluid from freezing in the winter.

**Do not use engine coolant anti-freeze or any other solution that can damage the vehicle paint.**

Follow the directions on the can for the correct amount to be used.

After filling the container, press the cap onto the filler neck.

### Adjusting washer jets

You need special equipment to adjust the jets for the windshield and the headlight washer system. See your authorized Audi Dealer.

## Wiper blades

Wiper blades must be in good condition so that you can see clearly through the windshield.

Clean your wiper blades regularly with a windshield washer solution to prevent streaking. If the blades are very dirty, for example with insects, carefully clean the blades with a sponge or a soft brush.

If the wiper blades begin to streak the windshield, this could be caused by residue left on the windshield by automatic car washes.

Fill the windshield washer container with a special solution available at your authorized Audi Dealer to remove the residue.

**To prevent damage to the wiping system, always loosen blades frozen to glass before operating wipers.**

Be sure to inspect the condition of your wiper blades regularly. For safety reasons, replace your wiper blades once or twice a year if necessary. See your authorized Audi Dealer for replacement blades.

### Notes

- **Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes affect the cleanability of the windshield.**
- **To prevent damage to wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near the wiper blades.**
- **To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers by hand.**



## Replacing wiper blades

### Removing

- Raise the wiper arm and hold wiper blade horizontally.
- Depress locking spring **A** and remove blade by pulling it towards the windshield **B**.

### Installing

- The locking spring must click into place on the wiper arm.

When installing wiper blades with molded wind deflectors, always make sure the deflector points down.

## Tires / Wheels

Tires are important but often abused parts of a vehicle. They not only influence comfort and ride, but perform vital safety functions. This section is intended to provide you with important information regarding their proper use, care and replacement.

- Be sure to inspect your tires at least every 2,000 miles (3 000 kilometres) for wear and damage.
- Damage to wheels and tires is not always easy to see. If you believe that a tire or wheel has been damaged, it is best to have it replaced as soon as possible. Internal tire damage can never get better or "heal" itself, it can only get worse over time. Tire damage can lead to tire failure and loss of vehicle control. See your authorized Audi Dealer for advice and assistance.
- Mark tires before removing them. Re-mount tires on the same vehicle side because the rotation direction must stay the same.

- Store removed tires in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. Tires which are not on wheels should be stored standing up.
- New tires may have different tread depths due to the configuration and design by the tire manufacturers. When replacing tires, use ones with matching tread depth.

### WARNING

- **Tires age even if they are not being used. Tires which are more than 6 years should be used only in an emergency and then with caution.**
- **Avoid damaging tires and wheel rims. If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive slowly and as nearly as possible at a right angle. Frequently check tires for uneven wear and damage.**

### WARNING continued

- **Remove embedded material.**
- **Replace worn or damaged tires immediately.**
- **Replace missing valve dust caps.**
- **Keep oil, fuel, brake fluid, etc. away from tires.**
- **Keep tires inflated correctly.**

### New tires

New tires tend to be slippery and cannot offer full traction until they have been properly broken in.

### WARNING

**To help avoid loss of control, always operate a vehicle with new tires at lower speeds and with special caution for the first 300 miles (480 kilometres).**

## Tire service life

The service life of your tires depends on the most part on the following factors:

### Tire pressure

Required **cold** tire inflation pressures are listed on a sticker inside the fuel filler flap or on the rear passenger's door pillar (right side) – depending on the model.



## WARNING

- **Incorrect tire pressures can lead to a serious or fatal accident:**
- **Incorrect tire pressures cause increased tire wear and can affect handling of the vehicle.**
- **Incorrect pressures can also lead to sudden tire failure and deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.**

 **Low tire pressures increase fuel consumption, which is detrimental to the environment.**

Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip.

**Tire pressures are very important, particularly when the vehicle is driven at higher speeds.**

If you are going to be driving at higher speeds (a lot of expressway driving), then it is recommended to increase the tire pressure by 5 psi (0.3 bar).

Always check tire pressures when the tires are cold. When the tires are warm, the pressure will be higher. **Do not reduce the pressure of warm tires.**

Don't forget to check the spare wheel. The inflation pressure is marked on the tire sidewall.

Use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking inflation pressures. Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall. Cold tire inflation pressure means: the vehicle has been standing for at least 3 hours or driven for less than 1 mile (1 km).

Do not forget to replace the valve stem caps after checking tire pressure.

## Driving habits

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tire wear.

## Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. When driving, however, various conditions can cause a wheel to become unbalanced. This may be noticed as vibrations in the steering.

Since tire imbalance can cause wear on the steering, suspension and tires, you should have your wheels re-balanced. A wheel should always be balanced if a new tire has been mounted or a tire was repaired.

## Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive and uneven tire wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If you notice excessive tire wear, contact your authorized Audi Dealer.



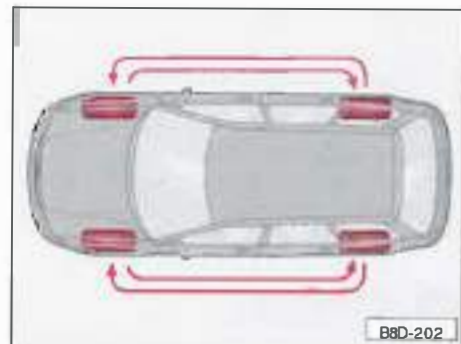
### Tire wear

The original tires on your vehicle have built-in wear indicators. They are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves and will appear as approximately  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12 mm) bands when the tire tread depth wears down to  $\frac{1}{16}$  inches (1.6 mm). Depending on the tire manufacturer, there are six to eight wear indicators evenly spaced around the circumference of the tire. Markings on the sides of the tires (e.g. the letters "TWI" or a triangle) show the locations of the wear indicators.

When the indicators appear in two or more adjacent grooves, it is time to replace the tires. We recommend, however, that you do not let the tires wear down this far. Worn tires cannot grip the road surface properly, and are even less effective on wet roads.

### WARNING

- **Worn tires can lead to a serious accident.**
- **Tires showing cuts, bruises or other damage may lead to tire failure, sudden deflation and loss of vehicle control.**
- **Since worn tires do not grip the road surface properly when the vehicle is driven on wet roads, the vehicle may tend to hydroplane sooner.**



### Tire rotation

If the front tires are worn more than rear tires, then you must rotate the front tires with the rear tires as shown in the illustration. By doing this, all tires will have approximately the same service life.

**Tires should always remain on same side of vehicle.**

Only when tires show unusual wear such as feather-edging should they be rotated diagonally. Your vehicle may be equipped with tires which have a specified rotation direction. The rotation direction is identified by arrow markings on the sides of the tires. The rotation direction must not be reversed. Therefore, these tires cannot be switched diagonally. If in doubt, discuss any unusual tire wear **with your authorized Audi Dealer's** service department.

After rotation adjust tire pressure and torque wheel bolts diagonally to 90 ft lb (120 Nm). Refer to "Changing a wheel" on page 267 for details.

## Tire replacement

Wheels and tires approved by the manufacturer have been specially matched to your vehicle and contribute greatly to the road-holding, driving characteristics and safety of the vehicle.

Make sure that the new tires also meet the specifications listed on the label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap or on the driver's door lock jamb.

It's important to remember that in spite of having the same tire designation, the actual size of a tire can vary from tire manufacturer to tire manufacturer. Using different tire and wheel rim combinations can result in reduced clearance between the tire and the vehicle body.

**Therefore, never mount tires that are of a different designation or have different dimensions from those of the factory supplied tires which came equipped on your vehicle.**

- If you must replace tires different from those which were originally factory supplied on your vehicle, always use the specific brands, specifications and dimensions which were specified by Audi for your vehicle.

Your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Client Relations have information regarding the tires and wheel rims specified for your car, and can tell you which tires and tire manufacturers were approved by the factory for original equipment installation.

- We recommend that you have your tires changed by an authorized Audi Dealer, because they have the special tools and necessary expertise.

Furthermore, your authorized Audi Dealer stocks a range of tires and wheels.

- If the spare tire is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wide profile tires), then use the spare tire for a short period of time only and drive with extra care. Replace the flat tire with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.



- For safety reasons, tires should be replaced in pairs and not individually. The tires with the deepest tread should always be mounted on the front wheels.

## WARNING

**It is essential to the safe operation of your vehicle that you use only rims and tires that have the same designation, sizes and types as those with which your vehicle was originally equipped.**

**Using tires and/or wheel rims different from those which originally came with your vehicle can reduce the clearance between the wheels and the vehicle body. The tires could then rub against the vehicle body damaging the tire or the vehicle body, or both, and seriously effect your safety as well as the safe operation of your vehicle.**

- Vehicles with **quattro**<sup>®</sup> must always have tires of the same size, construction and tread type. For details see page 207.
- Never mount used tires if you are not sure of their previous history.
- Whenever replacing a tubeless tire, always install a new valve stem. Tire repair should only be performed by a specialist.
- In the interest of maximum safety and best all-around vehicle handling, always buy replacement radial tires that have the same specifications with regard to tire size, design, load carrying capacity, speed rating, tread pattern, tread depth, etc. This also applies to Audi recommended alternate replacement tires.

## Tire specifications

### WARNING

**Never mix tires of different design such as steel belted radials with radial bias belted or bias ply tires etc. Mixing tire types will adversely affect road holding and can lead to loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

A knowledge of tire designations makes it easier to choose the correct tires. Radial ply tires have the following designations:

e.g. **225 / 55 R 17 97 H**

- 225** = Tire width in mm
- 55** = Height/width ratio in %
- R** = Tire construction: **Radial**
- 17** = Rim diameter in inches
- 97** = Load rating code
- H** = Speed rating code letter

The speed rating letter code indicates the maximum permissible road speeds:

### Summer tires:

S – up to 110 mph (180 km/h)

T – up to 118 mph (190 km/h)

H – up to 130 mph (210 km/h)

V – up to 150 mph (240 km/h)

Z – over 150 mph (240 km/h)

W – up to 168 mph (270 km/h)

Y – up to 185 mph (300 km/h).

“Z” tires carry the speed rating code letter in combination with the tire construction letter “R”.

**Winter tires** see page 260.



### WARNING

- **Driving faster than the maximum speed for which tires are rated and approved can lead to sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and lead to an accident and personal injury.**
- **Never operate a vehicle at speeds greater than the maximum speed rating of its tires.**
- **Always observe speed limits and adjust your vehicle to prevailing road and traffic conditions.**

### Note

Your vehicle is normally factory equipped with all season tires, which possess excellent driving characteristics and give your Audi optimum driving comfort. The speed limit of this tire is 130 mph (210 km/h). An electronic speed limiter (see page 129) will normally prevent your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating.



### WARNING

**Never operate this vehicle at speeds greater than 130 mph. Exceeding 130 mph (210 km / h) under any conditions will lead to sudden tire failure which can cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Always observe speed limits and adjust your vehicle speed to prevailing road and traffic conditions.**

**The manufacturing date** on the tire side wall (possibly only on the inside of the wheel):

DOT ... **1200** ... means that the tire was produced in the **12**th week of **2000**.

Tire strength and performance decline with age – even if the tires are not used. Tire manufacturers caution that a tire more than six years old cannot be expected to perform reliably and safely even in normal use.

## WARNING

**Old tires can fail in use, causing loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

**Replace tires after six years regardless of tread wear. Always reduce speed and drive cautiously if you must use an old tire in an emergency. Replace the tire as soon as possible.**

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread, shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200, Traction AA, Temperature A.**

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half  $1\frac{1}{2}$  times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## WARNING

**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.**

## Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### WARNING

**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.**

## Wheel replacement

If you wish to equip your vehicle with tires or wheels other than those installed at the factory, please note the following:

- **For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles - under certain conditions not even wheels from the same vehicle model.**

- **Wheel rims and wheel bolts are matched to fit your Audi. When installing different wheels (for example, wheels with winter tires), the correct wheel bolts with the proper length and conical shape of the bolt head must be used. The secure fit of the wheels and the proper functioning of the brake system and safety are dependent upon this.**

- **Wheel rims and wheel bolts are matched to fit your Audi.**

- **Before you plan on exchanging steel wheels, light alloy wheels, or winter tires already mounted on wheel rims, consult your authorized Audi Dealer. They have the technical information necessary to advise you which wheel rims and wheel bolts are compatible with the original factory installations.**

### WARNING

- **Incorrect tire/wheel parts may cause an accident and personal injury. Such parts will adversely affect the safe operation of your vehicle. Always use tires, wheel rims and wheel bolts that meet specifications of the original factory-installed equipment.**

- **If wheel trim discs or a front spoiler are installed, make sure the airflow for cooling the brakes is not obstructed.**

### Winter tires

The tires for your vehicle were selected for optimal performance under a variety of driving conditions.

If your Audi is equipped with high performance tires (identified by code letter V, W or Z on the tire flank) and you drive frequently on ice or snow, you should consider the installation of all season or winter tires. Let your authorized Audi Dealer advise and assist you.

For winter driving, the driveability of your vehicle can be improved by installing radial winter tires (M+S) with or without studs<sup>1)</sup>.

The **all season tires** with which your vehicle may have been equipped at the factory are performance tires advertised by the tire manufacturer as suitable for all weather use or with special mud and snow (M+S) capability.

**Winter tires**, sometimes also called snow tires, are designed for maximum traction in mud and snow.

### When installing winter tires, please note the following:

- Only radial ply winter tires may be installed. Ask your authorized Audi Dealer for the recommended tire size.
- Winter tires **must** be mounted on all four wheels.
- Because of the special design characteristics of radial ply M+S tires, they must be inflated 3 psi above the cold tire inflation pressures required for the regular radial ply tires. However, never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall.
- Winter tires will not do their job if the tread depth is less than 5/32 of an inch (4 mm).



### WARNING

- **Tires with badly worn treads and studs are very dangerous. Make sure they are replaced immediately.**
- **Never mix tires of different design such as steel belted radials with radial bias belted or bias ply tires, etc. Mixing tire types will adversely affect road holding and can lead to loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

<sup>1)</sup> Check with your local Motor Vehicle Bureau for possible restrictions.

- Winter tires with studs should be run only at moderate speeds when new in order to give the studs time to settle.

**Do not drive a vehicle equipped with winter tires at prolonged high speed.**

Winter tires use a softer rubber compound and a deeper tread pattern and therefore have a lower speed rating and reduced traction and durability when used on dry roads.

- When winter tires or all season tires are mounted, make sure you observe the speed limitations for which the tire is rated. The following speed rating code letters are applicable:

Q – up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

T – up to 118 mph (190km/h)

H – up to 130 mph (210 km/h).



## WARNING

- Winter tires available for your vehicle may have a maximum speed rating which is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle.
- Driving faster than the maximum speed for which tires are rated and approved will lead to sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and lead to an accident and personal injury.
- Never operate a vehicle at speeds greater than the maximum speed rating of its tires.
- Always observe speed limits and adjust your vehicle to prevailing road and traffic conditions.

## Snow chains

- For engineering reasons, snow chains must only be installed on special **winter tires<sup>1)</sup>**.

<sup>1)</sup> Not available at the time of printing.

- If you want to mount snow chains on your vehicle, consult your Audi Dealer for proper rim / tire combination.

- Snow chains should only be installed on the rear wheels, never on the front wheels.

**Where snow chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with All Wheel Drive.**

**When you install snow chains, check the tire air pressure first to make sure it's correct, otherwise the chains will not fit the wheel properly.**

Only use chains with fine pitch links protruding no more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (15 mm), including tensioner, from tire tread and side walls. Wheels must rotate freely in all steering positions with chains mounted to prevent damage to body, axle or brake components. **Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.**

Remove chains when roads are free of snow. Otherwise, the chains can damage the tires and impair vehicle handling.

### Difficult operating conditions

#### Driving under difficult conditions

Your Audi has been designed and equipped for normal operating conditions. This also applies to the frequency and the extent of service requirements as stated in the Maintenance brochure.

If you are planning to drive your vehicle under difficult operating conditions (for example, continuous trailer towing, very hot or cold weather, very dusty conditions, poor fuel quality, etc.) you may want to make special preparations such as changing to an appropriate oil viscosity, having your vehicle thoroughly inspected, etc. Furthermore, the maintenance should always be matched to the operating conditions (see page 228).

### Additional accessories, Modifications and Parts replacement

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety. This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the original new-vehicle condition. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced or if any modifications are made to the vehicle, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

● **Always consult** an authorized Audi Dealer **before** purchasing accessories and **before** any modifications are carried out.

● **In your own interest, we advise you to use only expressly approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi spare parts.**

**These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.**

● Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi Dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

## First aid kit



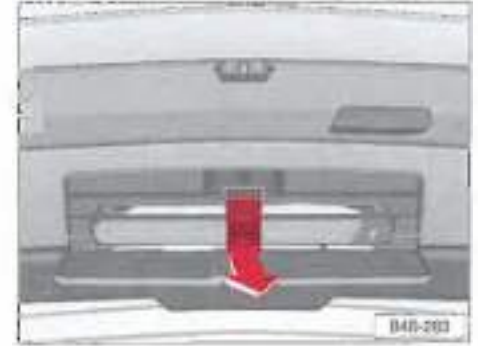
The first aid kit can be stowed in the center armrest (rear seats). The design of the center armrest varies from model to model. Here we show it in two versions.

To open, pull the handle in front.

Maximum load is 00 lbs. (0.5 kg)

- **Make sure the first-aid kit must meet all legal requirements.**
- **Don't forget to look at the expiration date on the contents of your first-aid kit. If the date has expired, you should purchase another one as soon as possible.**

## Emergency warning triangle



The factory-supplied warning triangle is fitted on the inside of the luggage compartment lid.

To open the cover, turn the knob 90°.

Remove the emergency triangle (arrow).

If you no longer have your original warning triangle and to equip your vehicle with a new one, contact your authorized Audi Dealer for advice.



## Jack and tools



The **jack and vehicle tools** are stored behind the left luggage compartment trim panel in a tool box.

To get to the tools, lift the box by the handle (see illustration).

To install, lay the tool box on the lower mounting in the vehicle and then push it to the rear until you hear it lock into place.

### WARNING

- Always make sure the jack, the tools, the spare tire and even a flat tire are secured in place and not loose, otherwise they could fly forward causing personal injury to passengers in the vehicle in an accident or sudden maneuver.

- The jack must never be used as a support to work underneath the vehicle. If the jack is accidentally dislodged, you could be seriously injured.

- Before you use the jack, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.

### WARNING continued

- Using a bumper jack to raise the vehicle will cause damage to the bumper system. Also, the jack may slip, causing injury.

- Do not support your vehicle on cinder blocks, bricks or other objects. These may not be able to support the load and could cause injury.

- Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

- If you must work under the vehicle, always use safety stands specifically designed for this purpose.

Your vehicle comes equipped with the following tools:

- Vehicle jack  
Before storing the jack, make sure it is wound back down as far as it will go.
- Hook for removing hook caps
- Lug wrench
- Plastic pin for changing wheels
- Screwdriver with a hexagonal opening in the handle for removing wheel bolts. The screwdriver has a reversible blade (flat blade on one end and Phillips head on the other).
- Open ended wrench 10 x 13
- Towing loop for transporting the vehicle (see page 281).

**Note**

**Never use the hexagonal opening in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.**

**WARNING**

**Always make sure the spare tire and even a flat tire are secured in place and not loose, otherwise they could fly forward causing personal injury to passengers in the vehicle in an accident or sudden maneuver.**

## Spare wheel



Your vehicle is equipped with a spare wheel (deflated full size spare tire) and an accompanying compressor.

The deflated full size spare tire and compressor are located beneath the floor of the luggage compartment. The spare wheel is held down by a knurled bolt.

On vehicle's equipped with a children's bench seat, the seat must be folded back to allow the spare wheel to be removed – see page 94.

“Changing a wheel” and “Inflating the deflated full size spare tire” – see page 267.

**The following points must be observed when the deflated full size spare tire is used:**

- **The deflated full size spare tire is only designed for brief, temporary use. Therefore, replace it with a normal wheel as soon as possible.**

- Never drive at speeds over 50 mph (80 km/h). Avoid jackrabbit starts, hard braking and aggressive turns!

- Do not take the vehicle to automatic car washes when the deflated full size spare tire is installed.

- The deflated full size spare tire was developed especially for your vehicle model. It must not be used on other models. Similarly, do not use spare wheels from other vehicle models on your car.

- For engineering reasons, snow chains must not be used on the deflated full size spare tire.

If the vehicle must be driven with snow chains, and one of its rear tires is flat, you will first need to install the collapsible rear tire on the front axle. This is because for engineering reasons snow chains can only be installed on special **winter tires\*1)** and only on **rear wheels**.

After you've installed the spare tire on the front axle, install the snow chain on the wheel you've removed from the front axle, and then install this wheel on the rear axle in place of the wheel whose tire is flat. As soon as possible, correct the tire pressure to the proper setting.

- Never install normal or winter tires on the deflated full size spare tire rim.

- Never drive the vehicle with more than one deflated full size spare tire installed.

<sup>1)</sup> Not available at the time of printing.

## Changing a wheel

- The deflated full size spare tire cannot be repaired or mounted using conventional shop equipment. This work always has to be performed by the manufacturer of the collapsible tire.
- All the air must be let out of the tire after use before stowing it in the storage area provided for it in the vehicle. Once all the air is out, the tire will return to its original form. To let the air out of the tire, either use a sharp object to press down on the metal pin in the valve, or use the valve-removing tool on the back side of the dust cap to unscrew the valve stem.



### WARNING

**You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow safety precautions:**

- **If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.**
- **Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up. This includes children as well as adults.**
- **Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the roadway and traffic.**
- **Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.**



### WARNING continued

- **After installing the spare wheel, make sure that you remount the flat tire/wheel in its storage area properly and tighten the plastic knurled screw securely.**
- **To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the automatic transmission in P (Park) will not prevent vehicle movement.**



### Step 1

**To avoid damaging parts of the air suspension system, you must have the ride level adjustment system in the jack mode whenever a jack or lift is used to raise the vehicle:**

#### Activating the jack mode

- Before using the jack or lift to raise the vehicle, you must press buttons (1) and (3) **at the same time** for at least 5 seconds with the ignition switched on.

In the jack mode, the LED's on the control buttons (1) and (3), the yellow LED in the manual mode on the ride level display (2) as well as the ride level control indicator light on the instrument cluster must all be on (see page 123).

- Now switch off the ignition and change the tire.

#### Shutting off the jack mode once you've finished changing the tire

You can shut off the jack mode again by simultaneously pressing buttons (1) and (3) for at least 5 seconds. The indicator light in the instrument cluster, the LED for the manual mode, and the LED's in the control buttons will go out.

The original state of the system and full functionality of the ride height control system will be restored.

In addition, the jack mode is automatically deactivated when the vehicle speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) is exceeded.



### Step 2

Take jack, tools and spare wheel out of the luggage compartment.

The hub caps can be removed with the hook which is provided in the vehicle's tool kit.

Insert the hook into a hole and pull the hub cap off.



**On wheels equipped with a bolt-on hubcap\* (double spoke design) the mounting bolts (see arrows) must, for safety reasons, never be loosened.**



### Step 3

- Mount the lug wrench over the wheel bolt all the way and turn to the left – see illustration. When doing this, hold the lug wrench at the end.

If the wheel bolts do not come loose, you can push the end of the lug wrench, if necessary, using your foot. Make sure you are standing firmly on the ground and hold on to the vehicle for support.

Loosen all wheel bolts about one turn.

**Do not yet remove the bolts.**



### Step 4

- Position the vehicle jack under the vehicle closest to the wheel to be changed:

The arrows in the illustration show the locations on the vehicle underbody where you should place the jack.

The jack should be placed approximately 6 in. (15 cm) behind the front wheel, or 10 in. (25 cm) in front of the rear wheel.

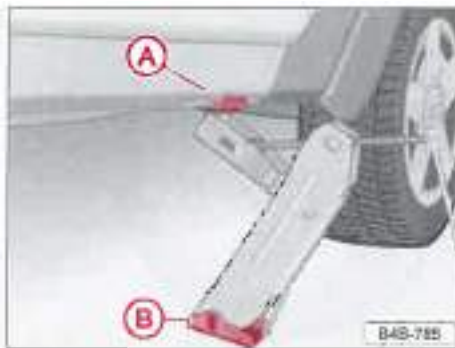


**Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

**⚠ WARNING**

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow safety precautions:

- Jacking at any other place may damage the vehicle or may result in personal injuries.
- An unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
- On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.

**Step 5**

- Turn the handle on the jack until the jack arm just fits underneath the vehicle.
- Position the jack arm on the lower sill of the vehicle so that the rib in the recess is surrounded by the jack claw (A) and the movable base plate (B) of the jack lies flat on the floor.

When you straighten the jack, make sure claw doesn't slip off the rib.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
- Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
- Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the roadway and traffic.

- To raise the vehicle, turn the handle clockwise. Only raise the vehicle as much as is needed to change a wheel.



### Step 6

- Unscrew the wheel bolt nearest the top, using the screwdriver handle (see above illustration). Place it on a clean surface (for example inside the hub cap, or on a piece of toweling) next to the jack and remove the wheel.



- Install plastic pin in its place.

Inserting the pin in the bolt hole assures that the holes in the wheel are in line with the threaded holes in the wheel hub.

- Then fully unscrew the other wheel bolts and remove the wheel leaving the plastic pin in the bolt hole.

Remove any dirt or corrosion present on mounting surface of wheel or vehicle before wheel replacement.

- Mount the spare tire and remount the wheel bolts lightly using the screwdriver handle. Then unscrew the plastic pin and insert the remaining wheel bolt.

The wheel bolts must be clean and easy to turn.

- Tighten all wheel bolts slightly with the lug wrench.





### Step 7

#### Inflating the deflated full size spare tire

- Remove the dust cap from the valve (1) by unscrewing it.
- Take the pressure compressor hose out of the case, and screw the coupling nut securely onto the valve.
- Insert the compressor connector in to the socket located on the side of the luggage compartment or inset it into the cigarette lighter socket – see page 181.

- Turn on the compressor. The required tire pressure will be reached within a few minutes. Use a pressure gauge to check the tire pressure. Never operate the compressor for longer than 5 minutes.

#### Note

You'll find adhesive labels on the deflated full size spare tire containing instructions for using the tire as well as information on the specified tire pressure.

### Step 8

- Unscrew the pressure hose from the valve and screw the dust cap back on.
- **To lower** the vehicle, turn the handle counter-clockwise until the jack is fully released. Remove jack.
- Then go crosswise from one bolt to another tightening them firmly.
- If necessary, press the hubcap back onto the hub of the spare wheel.

### Step 9

- Slip the plastic cover over the wheel containing the flat tire. Then stow this wheel in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it does not shift.

● **Carefully observe the points on page 266 when using the deflated full size spare tire.**

#### Notes

- The hex socket in the screwdriver can be used to make it easier to handle the wheel bolts. To do this, pull out the reversible blade.

**Never use this plastic tool to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.**

**After you change a tire:**

- **Deactivating the jack mode – see page 268.**
- **Use a torque wrench to check the wheel bolt tightening torque as soon as possible. With alloy wheels and a deflated full size spare tire, the torque should be 88.5 ft-lb (120 Nm).**

- Be sure to check the tire pressure as quickly as possible after you install a wheel that is fitted with new tires.

If you notice while changing a tire that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, then they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

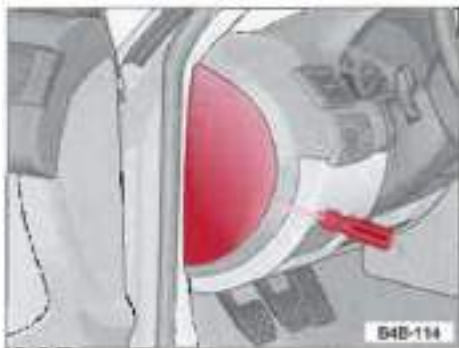
**WARNING**

- If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information on page 257.
- Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in luggage compartment.

**Note**

**Remember that the deflated full size spare tire is for temporary use only!**

## Fuses



A problem in the electrical system may be caused by a blown fuse.

Fuses are arranged in a centralized unit. The unit is located behind a cover at the end of the dashboard on the left hand side.

The crank handle for manual operation of the electric sunroof\* is clipped on the inside of the fuse box cover.

Two spare fuses are provided in the row of fuses on the right.

It is a good idea to keep a supply of spare fuses on hand. They are available from your Audi Dealer.

### Replacing a fuse

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**A fuse with too high amperage could damage the electrical part and cause a fire. Do not use a fuse with a higher amperage than the fuse being replaced.**

- **To avoid damaging the electrical system, turn off all lights and accessories and remove the ignition key before replacing a fuse.**

- Open the cover of the centralized unit by inserting a screwdriver in the slot of the cover and pry it off.

- Check the fuse listing on the next pages to find out which fuse belongs to the component that has failed.

- Remove blown fuse with the plastic clip provided. The clip is located on the holder in the fuse box.

- Replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the **same** amperage. You can recognize the blown fuse by the burnt metal strip.

- Reinstall the fuse box cover.

#### Notes

- **If a fuse blows repeatedly, do not keep on replacing it. The cause of the short circuit or overload must be found. On no account should fuses be repaired (e.g. patched up with tin foil or wire) as this may cause serious damage elsewhere in the electrical circuit or cause fire.**

- Some of the equipment listed is found on certain models only or may be options.

#### Color codes:

light brown: . . . . .	5 amps
brown: . . . . .	7.5 amps
red: . . . . .	10 amps
light blue: . . . . .	15 amps
yellow: . . . . .	20 amps
transparent (white): . . . . .	25 amps
light green: . . . . .	30 amps



**Fuse arrangement**

<b>No.</b>	<b>A<sup>1)</sup></b>
1 - Heated washer jets .....	5
2 - Turn signals .....	10
3 - Headlight washer (relay) illumination for glove compartment, climate control, Automatic Transmission, instrument cluster ...	5
4 - License plate light .....	5

<b>No.</b>	<b>A<sup>1)</sup></b>
5 - Instrument cluster, seat heating, test connection for cruise control, bulb monitor, Automatic Transmission display, switch lighting, mirror switches and actuators, airbag warning light, outside temperature indicator, climate control, solar roof, acoustic parking assistance system, navigation- system, car telephone, 4 Level Air Suspension .....	10
6 - Power locking system .....	5
7 - Anti-lock brake system (ABS), brake light switch .....	10
8 - Car telephone .....	5
9 - Heated mirrors .....	10
10 - Automatic headlight adjustment ..	5
11 - Cruise control (Automatic Transmission) .....	10
12 - On Board Diagnostic system .....	10
13 - Brake lights .....	10

<b>No.</b>	<b>A<sup>1)</sup></b>
14 - Interior lights, reading lights, anti-theft alarm system, vanity mirror, seat memory .....	10
15 - Instrument cluster, climate control, mirror and seat memory, navigation system .....	10
16 - Electronic Stability Programm .....	5
17 - Navigation system, 4 Level Air Suspension, automatic headlight adjustment .....	10
18 - High-beam, right .....	10
19 - High-beam, left .....	10
20 - Low beam, right, headlight adjustment .....	15
21 - Low beam, left, headlight adjustment .....	15
22 - Side marker and tail light, right ..	5
23 - Side marker and tail light, left .....	5
24 - Wiper and washer system .....	25
25 - Blower for heating (climate control), solar roof .....	30

<sup>1)</sup> Amps

No.	A <sup>1)</sup>	No.	A <sup>1)</sup>
26 - Rear window defogger, air recirculation .....	30	35 - Vacant	
27 - Heated steering wheel, rear window wiper .....	15	36 - Front fog lights, rear fog light .....	15
28 - Fuel pump .....	20	37 - Radio .....	20
29 - Engine timing .....	30	38 - Luggage compartment light, power locking system .....	20
30 - Power roof .....	20	39 - Emergency flasher system .....	15
31 - Back-up lights, cruise control, Automatic Transmission, data link connector for On Board Diagnostic, automatic dimming inside mirror ..	15	40 - Horn .....	25
32 - Engine timing .....	20	41 - Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ....	25
33 - Cigarette lighter .....	15	42 - Electronic Stability Programm ....	25
34 - Engine timing .....	15	43 - S-contact (radio) .....	5
		44 - Seat heating .....	30

**Automatic circuit breakers**

The electric power windows and the electric seat adjusters are protected with circuit breakers which reset automatically after the circuit overload has been corrected.

<sup>1)</sup> Amps

## Replacing bulbs

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi Dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights)\*

Your vehicle may be equipped with gas discharge lamps. Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs exchanged by a qualified technician.

Headlights with xenon light are identified by the high voltage sticker (see symbol above).



### WARNING

**Only your authorized Audi Dealer or a qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps (xenon light). Due to the high voltage, improper handling can cause serious personal injury.**

## Installing / replacing a radio

If you wish to install a radio or replace the factory installed radio, please note the following:

- The factory installed radio connectors are designed for Genuine Audi Radios.

When installing a different radio, difficulties could arise such as:

- the radio may not fit into the space provided
- the electrical connections may not be compatible
- different connector terminals may be needed.
- Therefore, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi Dealer install or replace the radio.

They are the most familiar with the technical features of your vehicle. They also offer Genuine Audi Radios with the necessary installation components and instructions.



### WARNING

**Improperly installing a radio could cause a short circuit. This could result in an electrical fire.**

## Emergency starting

### Note

#### Starting by pushing or towing

Your vehicle with automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

#### Starting with jumper cables

### WARNING

- Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.
- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.

### WARNING continued

- A discharged battery can already freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, the frozen battery must be thawed completely, otherwise it could explode.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.

### WARNING continued

- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different Ah rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different amp. (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.

**Note**

- **Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.**

- Vehicle with discharged battery:

Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to **N (Neutral)** or **P (Park)** and set parking brake.

**Use of jumper cables****WARNING**

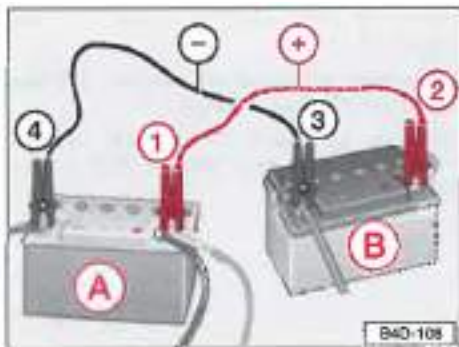
- **To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.**
- **The jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.**
- **When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.**

Removing the battery cover – see page 245.

**Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.**

**Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (-) to NEGATIVE (-).**





**A – Discharged vehicle battery**

**B – Booster battery**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

- 1 - Connect clamp of plus cable to positive (+) terminal (1) of discharged vehicle battery.
- 2 - Connect clamp on opposite end of cable to positive (+) terminal (2) of booster battery.
- 3 - Connect clamp of minus cable (black) to negative (-) terminal (3) of booster battery.
- 4 - Connect clamp on opposite end of negative cable to the negative (-) terminal (4) of the discharged vehicle battery.  
**Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.**
- 5 - Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- 6 - Start engine with discharged vehicle battery in the usual manner. If engine fails to start, do not continue to crank but contact your nearest Audi Dealer or qualified workshop.
- 7 - With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in exact reverse order: Steps 4 thru 1.

## Emergency towing with commercial tow truck

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

### General hints

- **Never tow your Audi otherwise this will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
- **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
- **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a car carrier (flat bed truck).**

**To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tool kit and attach to the front anchorage.**

### WARNING

**A towed vehicle is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a towed vehicle for any reason.**



### Front towing anchorage

On the right side under the bumper, you'll find a threaded hole. Screw the towing loop into this hole.

In order to access the front towing anchorage, first remove the front grille by pulling it off – see illustration.



Screw the towing eye tightly into the threaded hole until it stop turning.

After use, unscrew the towing loop and put it back in the tool kit. **The towing loop must always be kept in the vehicle.**

When reinstalling the front grille, first insert the tabs into the guides provided for them. Then push grill back into place.



### Rear towing anchorage

The rear towing anchorage can be found on the right side of the vehicle, under the bumper. It is covered by a flap.

To access the anchorage, you must first remove the flap:

The cover has four quick release fasteners, two on each side. Using a coin, turn the fastener (1) to the left  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a turn. Now remove the flap.

To reinstall, re-insert the flap and turn the fasteners to the right.



### Front hook up

- Center the vehicle in relation to the car carrier ramp.
- Attach the towing loop in the front securely.
- Attach the winch hook to the towing loop.

**Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the car carrier ramp.**

### Rear hook up

- Center the vehicle in relation to the car carrier ramp.
- Attach the winch hook to the towing anchorage in the rear.

**Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the car carrier ramp.**

## Lifting vehicle

### Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

#### Notes

● The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.

The same lifting points as illustrated on the next page for the hoist also apply when a floor jack is used.

○ To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, it is necessary to insert a rubber pad between the floor jack and the lift points.

● To prevent damaging the shock absorbers when lifting the vehicle with a jack or on a hoist, the level selection must be in the jack mode. See next page.



#### WARNING

● To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage, lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated. Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.

● When removing such heavy components, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious damage or personal injury.



#### WARNING continued

● If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

● Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.

● Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.



## Jack mode

### Activating

Before lifting the vehicle with a jack or lift, press buttons **(1)** and **(3)** **at the same time** for at least 5 seconds with the ignition switched on.

When the system is in the jack mode, the LED's on control buttons **(1)** and **(3)**, the yellow LED for the manual mode on the level indicator **(2)** and the warning light for level control in the instrument cluster (see page 123) will all come on.

Once this happens, turn off the ignition. The vehicle can now be lifted.

### Deactivating

To deactivate the jack mode, press buttons **(1)** and **(3)** at the same time for at least 5 seconds. The warning light in the instrument cluster, the LED for manual mode, and the LED's on the control buttons will all turn off.

The original system state and full functionality of the ride height system are now restored.

In addition, the jack mode will automatically be deactivated when vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h).

### WARNING

**Make certain that no one is lying under the vehicle or has his / her head or hands in the wheel house while the ride height is changing or when a jack is being used.**



## Lifting points

The lift arms and the floor jack must be applied beneath these points only.

### Lifting point front

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same height as the jack mounting point.

Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.



### **Lifting with vehicle jack**

Refer to "Changing a wheel" on page 267

### **Lifting point rear**

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for on-board jack.

**Engine data**

Maximum output SAE net	<b>250 hp</b> at 5800 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net	258 ft. lbs. at 1850 rpm
No. of cylinders	<b>6</b>
Displacement	163 CID (2671 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Stroke	<b>3.40 in (86,4 mm)</b>
Bore	<b>3.19 in (81.0 mm)</b>
Compression ratio	<b>9.3 : 1</b>
Fuel <sup>1)</sup>	Premium unleaded

<sup>1)</sup> For further details see "Fuel supply" on page 225.

## Capacities

<b>Capacities (approx.)</b>		
<b>Fuel tank</b> .....	18.5 gal	(70 liters)
Reserve (of total capacity) .....	2.4 gal	(9 liters)
<b>Windshield and headlight washer container</b> ..	5.0 quarts	(4.7 liters)
<b>Engine oil</b>		
with filter change .....	6.0 quarts	(5.7 liters)
<p>The oil level should be checked while topping up.  <b>Do not overfill</b> – see page 235.</p>		



**Always heed all WARNINGS  
on page 232.**



## Dimensions

Dimensions (approx.) <sup>1)</sup>		
Length	189.4 in	4810 mm
Width across mirrors	76.1 in	1932 mm
Height unloaded		
– Low level	60.1 in	1526 mm
– Highest level	62.7 in	1592 mm
Ground clearance loaded		
– Low level	5.6 in	142 mm
– Highest level	8.2 in	208 mm
Turning circle diameter	38.3 ft	11.70 m

<sup>1)</sup> The specifications refer to the basic model. Differences may occur depending on the model type and options ordered, for example, tire sizes.

### Note

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground.

**Be careful not to damage them.**

## Weights

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the left door jamb.

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which combines passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight.

Luggage weight is not increased by the use of a roof rack, unless the passenger capacity is reduced accordingly.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle.

### WARNING

- **The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**
- **Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.**

The **vehicle capacity weight** (max. load) is listed inside the fuel filler flap.

### Notes

- **The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.**
- **Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum Gross Vehicle Weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.**
- **Always observe local regulations.**

## Roof weight

The maximum permissible roof weight is 200 lbs (100 kg).

Only use the roof rack system specifically designed, tested and approved by Audi.

Distribute the load evenly and do not exceed the **Permissible Roof Weight** (including the weight of the roof rack system) or the **Gross Vehicle Weight**.

For more details see page 191.

## Vehicle identification

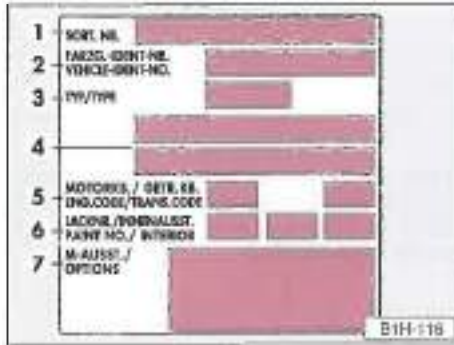


### The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

is located on the driver's side so that it is visible from the outside through the windshield – see illustration.

### The safety compliance sticker

is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the left door jamb. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).



### The vehicle identification label

is located in the luggage compartment under the carpeted cover in the recess of the spare wheel.

- 1 - Production control no.
- 2 - Vehicle identification no.
- 3 - Type code number
- 4 - Type designation/  
Engine output in **Kilowatts**

- 5 - Engine and transmission code letter
- 6 - Paint no. / Interior
- 7 - Optional equipment numbers

Vehicle data 2 to 7 are also found in your Maintenance booklet.

### The high voltage warning label

is located on the lock carrier.

**The spark ignition system meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.**



**Always heed all WARNINGS on page 232.**

## Reporting safety defects

### (Applicable to U.S. only)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at:

1-800-424-9393

(or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area)

or write to:

NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation,  
Washington, D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

## Outside the U.S.A. or Canada

### Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that

- unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
- fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;

- service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;

- replacement parts may not be readily available.

**Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.**

## Service Repair Manuals

Audi Official Factory service manuals are published as soon as possible after model introduction.

Service manuals are available from either of the following sources:

### **Robert Bentley, Inc.**

Order directly from the publisher: Call toll-free **1 (800) 423-4595** (from the United States and Canada, 8:30 AM to 5:00 PM EST) or go to **www.rb.com** on the Internet.

### **Dymont Distribution, Inc.**

Call toll-free **1 (800) 544-8021** from 8:00 AM to 8:00 PM, EST, Monday thru Friday.







**A**

Acoustic park assist	112
Adding	
– Brake fluid	242
– Engine coolant	240
– Engine oil	236
Additional accessories	262
Adjustable steering column	98
Adjusting	
– Climate controls	163
– Head restraints	75, 79
– Mirrors	72
– Seats	76
– Washer jets	250
Air circulation – luggage compartment	89
Air cleaner	248
Air conditioning	162
Air outlets	165
Air recirculation	164
Air suspension	153
Air vents	165
Airbag	25
– System components	25
Airbag system	25
– Care	41
– Disposal	41
– Front airbags	25
– How it works (front airbag)	27
– Seating position	29
– Service	41
Alarm system	67
All Wheel Drive	207
Alternator	120, 127
Ambient lighting	172
Anti-Lock Brake System	202
Anti-theft alarm system	67
Armrest	85, 263
Armrest with telephone	190
Ashtray	180
Auto-Check System	138
Automatic air recirculation	164
Automatic headlight adjustment	148
Automatic shift lock	106
Automatic transmission	104
– Back-up lights	108
– Ignition key safety interlock	104
– Reverse	108
– Tiptronic	105

**B**

Back-up lights – Automatic transmission	108
Battery	244
– Charging	246
– Replacing	248
– Winter operation	245
Belt tensioner	24
Body cavity sealing	220
Bolt-on hubcap	269
Booster seats	48
Boot	184
Brake booster	201
Brake fluid	242
Brake fluid reservoir	242
Braking	201
Break-in period	193
Bulb replacing	277
Buzzer	113

- C**
- Capacities ..... 287
  - Care of
    - exterior ..... 212
    - interior ..... 217
  - Cargo net ..... 89
  - Carphone ..... 190
  - Catalytic converter ..... 197
  - CB radios ..... 189
  - CD changer ..... 184
  - Central locking system ..... 59
    - Rear lid ..... 63
  - Changing a wheel ..... 267
  - Changing engine oil ..... 236
  - Checking engine oil level ..... 235
  - Child restraint anchorages ..... 53
  - Child safety ..... 44
  - Child safety lock for rear doors ..... 62
  - Child seat bench ..... 92
  - Child seats
    - Booster seats ..... 48
    - Convertible seats ..... 47
    - Infant seats ..... 45
    - Older children ..... 49
  - Chime ..... 57, 113, 149
  - Cigarette lighter ..... 181
  - Cleaning
    - Engine compartment ..... 219
    - Glass ..... 217
    - Inside of vehicle ..... 217
    - Leather upholstery ..... 217
    - Outside of vehicle ..... 212
    - Safety belts ..... 218
    - Windows ..... 215
  - Cleaning and protection ..... 212
  - Climate controls ..... 162
  - Clock ..... 117
  - Coat hooks ..... 179
  - Compartment for Service Literature Wallet ..... 183
  - Convenient entry function ..... 101
  - Convertible locking retractor ..... 51
  - Convertible seats ..... 47
  - Coolant temperature gauge ..... 118
  - Cooling system ..... 238
    - Expansion tank ..... 239
  - Cruise control ..... 158
  - Cup holder ..... 182
  - Curb weight ..... 289
- D**
- Dashboard ..... 8
  - Data ..... 286
  - Date display ..... 117
  - Daytime running lights ..... 148
  - Deflated full size spare tire ..... 266
  - Defrosting windows ..... 151
  - Difficult operating conditions ..... 262
  - Digital clock ..... 117
  - Dimensions ..... 288
  - Doors ..... 59
  - Driver information system ..... 130
    - Calling up the menu ..... 131
    - Display types ..... 133
    - Entering settings ..... 134
    - Menu display ..... 131
    - Navigation display ..... 130
  - Driving economically ..... 195
  - Driving in foreign countries ..... 292
  - Driving on slopes ..... 200
  - Driving under difficult conditions ..... 262
  - Driving with Four-Wheel Drive .. 207
  - Duplicate key ..... 57

Dust filter .....	167
Dynamic headlight dimmer control .....	144

## E

Electric adjustable seats .....	78
Electrical socket .....	181
Electrical socket in the luggage compartment .....	181
Electrically heated seats .....	150
Electromagnetic interference compliance .....	291
Electronic differential lock .....	204
Electronic immobilizer .....	57, 124
Electronic speed limiter .....	129
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) .....	124, 152, 205
Emergency	
– Flasher .....	125, 152
– Key .....	56
– Starting .....	278
– Towing .....	281
– Unlocking fuel tank flap .....	224

– Warning triangle .....	263
Emission control system .....	197
– Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	125
Engine	
– Compartment .....	232
– Cooling .....	238
– Data .....	286
– Hood .....	231
– Oil .....	234
– Oil level .....	144
– Oil pressure .....	143
– Oil sensor defective .....	144

Engine oil	
– Adding .....	236
– Additives .....	234
– Changing .....	236
– Checking .....	235
– Grades .....	234
– Temperature gauge .....	117
Entering selections into the menu .....	132

## Environment

– Brake fluid .....	243
– Cleaning and protection .....	212

– Coolant .....	240
– Driving to minimize pollution and noise .....	195
– Engine oil .....	237
– Fuel .....	223
– Maintenance .....	228
– Starting procedures .....	114
– Tire pressure .....	253
– Unleaded fuel .....	225
– Washing .....	213
Exhaust system .....	197
Expansion tank .....	239

## F

Fan speed .....	164
Fastening eyes .....	89
Fastening the safety belt .....	20
Filler cap .....	223
First aid kit .....	263
Floor jack .....	283
Floor mat fasteners .....	102
Fluid	
– Brake .....	242



**J**

Jack .....	269
Jack and tools .....	264
Jack mode .....	155, 284
Jack support positions .....	269
Jumper cables .....	278

**K**

Key coding, air conditioning .....	166
Keys .....	56
Kick-down .....	109

**L**

Lane changer .....	156
Lifting	
– Floor jack .....	283
– Jack .....	267
– Workshop hoist .....	283
Lifting point	
– front .....	284
– rear .....	285
Lifting vehicle .....	283

Light bulbs .....	277
Light switch .....	148
Loading a roof rack .....	192
Lock positions of trunk lock cylinder .....	63
Locking retractor .....	51
Locking the vehicle .....	61
Locks	
– Doors .....	59
– Rear lid .....	63
Lubricants .....	234
Luggage compartment .....	88, 184
Luggage compartment light .....	172
Luggage net .....	89

**M**

Maintenance .....	228
Maintenance booklet .....	4
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) .....	125
Master key .....	56
Memory	
– Front seats .....	81
– Outside mirrors .....	74
– Steering wheel position .....	101

Menu button .....	131
Mirrors .....	72
Mobile telephones .....	189
Modifications .....	262

**N**

Navigation display .....	130
Notes to owner .....	2
Number of seats .....	19

**O**

OBD (On Board Diagnostic) .....	128
Octane rating .....	225
Odometer .....	119
Off-road ABS .....	202
Off-road driving .....	199
Off-road mode .....	202
Oil	
– Additives .....	234
– Change .....	236
– pressure .....	143
– Specification .....	234

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) .....	128
Opening the vehicle .....	61
Outside air temperature .....	137
Outside mirrors .....	72
Owner's literature storage .....	183

## P

Park assist .....	112
Parking brake lever .....	103
Partition net .....	91
Parts replacement .....	262
Payload .....	289
Pedals .....	102
Phone .....	190
Pollen filter .....	167
Power	
– Locks .....	59
– Mirrors .....	72
– Roof .....	168
– Steering .....	241
– Windows .....	69

## Q

quattro .....	207
– Snow chains .....	261
– Winter tires .....	207

## R

Radiator fan .....	241
Radio .....	277
Radio frequency display .....	138
Reading lights .....	171
Rear axle load .....	289
Rear facing child seat bench .....	92
Rear fog light .....	149
Rear lid .....	63
Rear lid – child safety lock .....	65
Rear lid light .....	172
Rear seats .....	86
Rear view mirror .....	72
Rear window defogger .....	151
Remote control .....	59
– coordination to a memory button .....	82

Remote rear lid release .....	65
Remote Transmitter .....	173
Removing the roof rack .....	192
Replacing a fuse .....	274
Replacing batteries	
– Master key .....	57
– Vehicle battery .....	248
Replacing bulbs .....	277
Replacing the radio .....	277
Replacing wiper blades .....	251
Reporting safety defects .....	292
Ride height adjustment .....	153
Roof rack .....	191
Roof weight .....	289, 290
Rough roads .....	199
Rugged terrain .....	199

## S

Safe driving hints .....	194
Safety belt	
– Fastening .....	20
– Unfastening .....	24
Safety belt warning light ...	17, 127

Safety belts .....	14	Spark plugs .....	249	<b>T</b>	
– Belt tensioner .....	24	Speed range .....	193	Tachometer .....	117
Safety compliance sticker .....	290	Speedometer .....	119	Tag .....	57
Seat belts and older children .....	49	Starter switch .....	113	Technical data .....	286
Seating capacity .....	19	Starting menu .....	131	Telephone .....	190
Seats .....	76	Starting procedures .....	114	Temperature gauge .....	118
Secondary key .....	56	Starting with jumper cables .....	278	Tie-down hooks .....	89
Securing a child seat .....	51	Steering lock .....	113	Tilt and telescopic steering wheel .....	98
Securing luggage .....	89	Steering wheel .....	98	Tiptronic .....	105
Self-leveling suspension .....	123	– Tiptronic .....	106	– steering wheel .....	106
Service interval display .....	121	Steering wheel with Audio controls .....	185	Tire	
Service literature wallet .....	183	Stopping engine .....	115	– Pressure .....	253
Service Repair Manuals .....	293	Storage compartment light .....	178	– Replacement .....	255, 259
Setting a date .....	135	Storage compartments .....	182	– Rotation .....	254
Setting the menu .....	131	Storing outside mirror setting .....	81	– Specification .....	256
Setting the time / date .....	118	Storing seat position .....	81, 83	– Wear .....	254
SIDEGUARD .....	39	Storing steering wheel position .....	81	Tire quality grading information .....	258
Ski sack .....	96	Sun shade .....	177	Tires .....	252
Sliding roof .....	168	Sun visors .....	177	Tools .....	264
Sliding / prop-up roof .....	168	Sunroof .....	168	Towing .....	281
Snow chains .....	261	Suspension, self-leveling .....	123	Towing anchorages .....	281
Socket .....	181	Switches .....	148	Trailer towing .....	208
Solar roof .....	166, 170			– Driving instructions .....	210
Spare wheel .....	266				

– Technical requirements	208
– Tips	211
– Trailer brakes	209
Transporting heavy objects	88
Trip computer	146
Trip odometer	120
Turn signals	125, 156

## U

Undercoating	198, 220
Unfastening – Safety belt	24
Universal Transmitter	173
Unleaded fuel	225
Unpaved roads	199

## V

V-belt	249
Valet key	56
Vehicle battery	245
Vehicle care	
– Exterior	212
– Interior	217
– Windows	215

Vehicle identification	290
Vehicle identification label	291
Vehicle identification number	290
Vehicle jack	265
Vehicle literature	2
Ventilation	162
Voltage warning label	291
Voltmeter	120

## W

Warning and indicator lights	10
Warning lights	10, 122
Warning / indicator lights	
– Airbag system	125
– Anti-lock brake system	125
– Battery voltage	143
– Brake	126
– Brake light	141
– Brake pads worn	143
– Coolant level	141
– Coolant temperature	141
– Electronic power control	123
– Engine oil level	144
– Engine oil pressure	143

– Fuel	143
– Generator	127
– Headlights / tail lights	143
– High beam	125
– Malfunction Indicator Lamp	125
– Safety belts	127
– Speed warning	144
– Turn signals	125
– Washer fluid	143
Warranty booklet	4
Washer reservoir	250
Washer system	160
Wheels	252
Wheels replacement	255, 259
Windows	69
– Cleaning	215
– Defrosting	163
Windshield washer container	250
– Capacity	287
Winter operation	
– Battery	245
– Cooling system	238
– Snow chains	261
– Tires	260
– Vehicle care	213



– Windows .....	215
– Windshield washer system ..	250
Winter tires .....	207, 260
Wiper .....	160
Wiper blades .....	251
Workshop hoist .....	283

**X**

Xenon lights .....	157, 277
--------------------	----------



**Betriebsanleitung**  
**Audi allroad**  
**Nordamerika**  
**englisch 10.00**  
**211.561.4BH.21**